ŠkodaSuperb
OWNER'S MANUAL


RADIO
MEDIA
PHONE
TONE
MAP
NAV
TRAFFIC
SETUP
PASSENGER AIR BAG

Introduction

You have opted for a Škoda – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

Your new Škoda offers you a vehicle featuring the most modern engineering and a wide range of equipment which you will undoubtedly wish to use to the full during your daily motoring. That is why, we recommend that you read this Owner's Manual attentively to enable you to become familiar with your car and all that it offers as quickly as possible.

Please do not hesitate to contact your specialist garage or importer should you have any further questions or any problems regarding your vehicle which may arise. He will be ready at any time to receive your questions, suggestions and criticisms.

National legal provisions, which deviate from the information contained in these operating instructions, take precedence over the information contained in the operating instructions.

We wish you much pleasure with your Škoda and pleasant motoring at all times.

Your **Škoda** Auto

On-board literature

The on-board literature for your vehicle consists of this "**Owner's Manual**" as well as the brochures "**Quick Reference Guide**", "**Service Schedule**" and "**Help on the road**". There can also be a variety of other additional operating manuals and instructions on-board (e.g. an operating manual for the radio) depending on the vehicle model and equipment.

If one of the publications listed above is missing, please contact a Škoda Service Partner immediately, where one will be glad to assist you in such matters.

One should note that the details given in the vehicle's papers always take precedence over those in the Owner's Manual.

Owner's Manual

This Owner's Manual describes the **current scope of equipment**. Certain items of equipment listed are only installed later on and only envisaged for particular markets. The **illustrations** can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended for general information.

In addition to information regarding all the controls and equipment, the Owner's Manual also contains important information regarding care and operation for your safety and also to retain the value of your vehicle. To provide you with valuable tips and aids. You can learn how how you can operate your vehicle **safely**, **economically** and in an **environmentally** conscious way.

For safety reasons, please also pay attention to the information on accessories, modifications and replacement of parts ⇒ page 228.

The other chapters of the Owner's Manual are also important, however, for proper treatment of your car - in addition to regular care and maintenance - helps to retain its value and in many cases is also one of the conditions for possible warranty claims.

The Brief instruction

includes an overview of the most important controls of your vehicle.

The Service schedule

contains:

- Vehicle data,
- Service intervals,
- Overview of the service work,
- Service proof,
- Confirmation of mobility warranty,
- important information on the warranty.

The confirmations of the carried out service work are one of the conditions for possible warranty claims.

Please always present the Service schedule when you take your car to a Škoda Service Partner.

If the Service schedule is missing or worn, please contact your Škoda Service Partner, where your car is serviced regularly. You will receive a duplicate, in which the previously carried out service work are confirmed.

Help on the road

contains the addresses and telephone numbers of Škoda Importers.

Contents

Layout of this Owner's Manual (explanations) ... 6

Using the system ... 7

Cockpit ... 8
- Overview ... 8

Instruments and Indicator/Warning Lights ... 10
- General view of the instrument cluster ... 10
- Engine revolutions counter ... 11
- Speedometer ... 11
- Coolant temperature gauge ... 11
- Fuel gauge ... 11
- Counter for distance driven ... 12
- Service Interval Display ... 12
- Digital clock ... 14
- Multi-functional indicator (onboard computer)* ... 14
- Information display* ... 19
- Audio ... 21
- Navigation system* ... 21
- Auto Check Control* ... 22
- Warning lights ... 26

Unlocking and locking ... 36
- Key ... 36
- Changing the battery of the radio remote control ... 36
- Electronic immobiliser ... 37
- Child safety lock ... 37
- Central locking system ... 38
- Remote control ... 43
- Description ... 43
- Unlocking and locking car ... 44
- Synchonisation of the remote control ... 45
- Anti-theft alarm system* ... 45
- Power windows ... 47
- Electric sliding/tilting roof* ... 50

Lights and Visibility ... 53
- Lights ... 53
- Interior lighting ... 61
- Visibility ... 63
- Windshield wiper and wash system ... 65
- Rear-view mirror ... 68
- Exterior mirror ... 69
- Automatic dimming exterior mirror* ... 70

Seats and Stowage ... 71
- Front seats ... 71
- Adjusting front seats electrically* ... 72
- Head restraints ... 75
- Middle rear head restraint* ... 75
- Rear seats ... 76
- luggage compartment ... 78
- The roof rack* ... 83
- Cup holder ... 84
- Ashtray ... 85
- Cigarette lighter*, power sockets ... 86
- Storage compartments ... 87

The air conditioning system ... 96
- Climatic* (semi-automatic air conditioning system) ... 96
- Climatronic* (automatic air conditioning) ... 100
- Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)* ... 106

Starting-off and Driving ... 110
- Setting steering wheel position ... 110
- Ignition lock ... 111
- Starting the engine ... 112
- Rear parking aid* ... 115
- Front and rear parking aid* ... 116
- Park Assist* ... 117
- Cruise control system (CCS)* ... 120

Automatic gearbox DSG* ... 123
- Automatic gearbox DSG* ... 123

Communication ... 130
- Multifunction steering wheel* ... 130
- Universal telephone preinstallation GSM II* ... 133
- Universal telephone preinstallation GSM III* ... 137
- Phone voice phonebook* ... 143
- Mobile phones and two-way radio systems ... 145
- Input AUX-IN ... 146
- CD changer* ... 146

Safety ... 149

Passive Safety ... 149
- Basic information ... 149
- Correct seated position ... 150

Seat belts ... 154
- Why seat belts? ... 154
- The physical principle of a frontal collision ... 155
- Important safety information regarding the use of seat belts ... 155
- How are seat belts correctly fastened? ... 156

Airbag system ... 160
- Description of the airbag system ... 160
- Front airbag ... 161
- Driver's knee airbag* ... 164
- Side airbags* ... 165

Head airbags* ... 167
Deactivating an airbag ... 168

Transporting children safely ... 171
What you should know about transporting children! 171
Child seat ... 174
Attaching a child seat using the "ISOFIX" system . 177
Attaching child seat using the "Top Tether" system 178

Driving Tips ... 179

Intelligent Technology ... 179
Electronic stability programme (ESP)* ... 179
Brakes ... 182
Brake booster ... 183
Antilock brake system (ABS) ... 183
Brake Assist* ... 183
Uphill-Start off-Assist* ... 184
Electromechanical power steering ... 184
Tyre inflation pressure-control system* ... 185
Diesel particle filter* (diesel engine) ... 186

Driving and the Environment ... 187
A new engine ... 187
New tyres ... 187
New brake pads ... 187
Catalytic converter ... 188
Driving in an economical and environmentally conscious manner ... 188
Environmental compatibility ... 192
Motoring abroad ... 192
Avoiding damage to your vehicle ... 193

Towing a trailer ... 194
Towing a trailer ... 194

General Maintenance ... 197

Taking care of your vehicle and cleaning the vehicle ... 197
General ... 197
Care of the exterior of vehicle ... 197
Care of the interior of vehicle ... 202

Fuel ... 205
Petrol ... 205
Diesel ... 205
Refuelling ... 206

Inspecting and Replenishing ... 208
Engine compartment ... 208
Engine oil ... 210
Cooling system ... 213
Brake fluid ... 215
Battery ... 216
Windshield washer system ... 220

Wheels and Tyres ... 222
Wheels ... 222

Accessories, changes and replacement of parts 228
Accessories and replacement parts ... 228
Technical changes ... 228

Breakdown assistance ... 229

Breakdown assistance ... 229
First-aid box* ... 229
Warning triangle ... 229
Fire extinguisher* ... 229
Vehicle tool kit ... 230
Tyre repair kit* ... 230
Spare wheel ... 231
Changing a wheel ... 231
Jump-starting ... 236
Tow-starting and towing vehicle ... 237

Fuses and light bulbs ... 241
Electric fuses ... 241
Bulbs ... 246

Technical Data ... 255

Technical Data ... 255
General information ... 255
Used abbreviations ... 255
Performances ... 255
Weight ... 255
Identification details ... 255
Fuel consumption according to the regulations (99/100/EU) ... 256
Dimensions ... 257
1.8 ltr./118 kW TSI - EU 4 ... 258
1.9 ltr./77 kW TDI PD - EU 4 ... 260
2.0 ltr./103 kW TDI PD - EU 4 ... 262

Index ... 265

Layout of this Owner's Manual (explanations)

The Owner's Manual has been systematically designed, in order to make it easy for you to find and absorb the information you require.

Chapters, table of contents and subject index

The text of the manual are divided into relatively short sections which are combined into easy-to-read **chapters**. The chapter you are reading at any particular moment is highlighted at the bottom right of the page.

The **Table of contents** is arranged according to the chapters and the detailed **Subject index** at the end of the Owner's Manual helps you to rapidly find the information you are looking for.

Sections

The majority of **Sections** apply to all models.

Since there is a wide range of different equipment and options available it is clearly unavoidable, despite dividing the contents into sections, that mention may be made of equipment which is not fitted to your vehicle.

Equipment which is marked * is only standard on certain vehicle model versions or only suppliable as optional equipment for certain models.

Brief information and instructions

Each section has a **Heading**.

This is followed by **Brief information** (in large italic lettering), which tells you the subject which is dealt with in this section.

Most of the illustrations are accompanied by an **Instruction** (in relatively large letters) which explains to you in a straightforward way the action you have to take. **Work steps** which have to be carried out are illustrated with a hyphen.

Notes

All four kinds of notes, which are used in the text, are always stated at the end of the respective section.

WARNING

The most important notes are marked with the heading WARNING. These WARNING notes draw your attention to a serious risk of accident or injury. While reading the text you will frequently encounter a double arrow followed by a small warning symbol. This symbol is intended to draw your attention to a WARNING note at the end of the section to which you must pay careful attention.

Caution

A **Caution** note draws your attention to the possibility of damage to your vehicle (e.g. damage to gearbox), or points out general risks of an accident.

For the sake of the environment

An **Environmental** note draws your attention to environmental protection aspects. This is where you will, for example, find tips aimed at reducing your fuel consumption.

Note

A normal **Note** draws your attention in a general way to important information.

Direction indications

All direction indications such as “left”, “right”, “front”, “rear” relate to the direction of travel of the vehicle. ■

Using the system

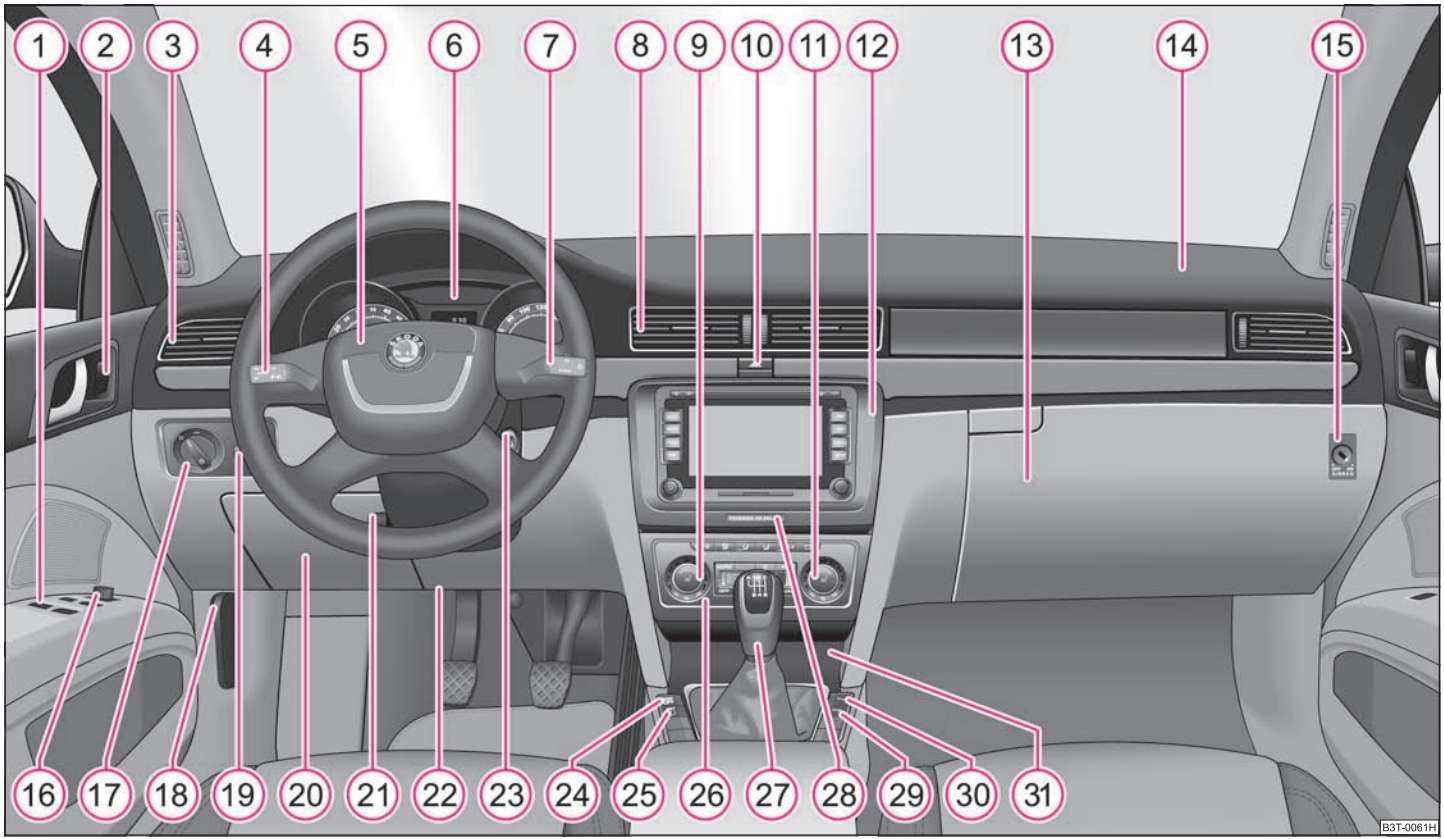

Fig. 1 Certain items of equipment shown in the illustration are only fitted to particular model versions or are optional items of equipment.

Cockpit

Overview

This general view is designed to help you to quickly become familiar with the instruments, gauges and controls.

(1) Power windows 47
(2) Central locking switch 39
(3) Air outlet vents 99
(4) Lever for the multi-functional switch:
- Turn signal light, headlight and parking light, headlight flasher 60
- Speed regulating system* 120

(5) Steering wheel:
- with horn
- with driver airbag 161
- with pushbuttons for radio, navigation system and mobile phone* 130

(6) Instrument cluster: Instruments and indicator lights 10
(7) Lever for the multi-functional switch:
- Multi-functional indicator* 14
- Windshield wiper and wash system 65

(8) Air outlet vents 99
(9) Control dial for heating on the driver's seat* 77
(10) Switch for hazard warning lights 59
(11) Control dial for heating on the front passenger seat* 77
(12) Depending on equipment fitted:
- Radio*
- Navigation*

(13) Storage compartment on the front passenger side 88
(14) Front passenger airbag 161
(15) Switch for the front passenger airbag* (in front passenger stowage compartment) 169
(16) Electric exterior mirror adjustment 69
(17) Light switch 53
(18) Bonnet release lever 208
(19) Control dial for the instrument lighting and control dial for the headlight beam range regulation* 58, 59
(20) Storage compartment on the driver's side 89
(21) Lever for adjusting the steering wheel 110
(22) Driver's knee airbag* 164
(23) Ignition lock 111
(24) Depending on equipment fitted:
- Switch for the ESP* 179
- Switch for the TCS* 181

(25) Tyre inflation pressure-control system* 185
(26) Depending on equipment fitted:
- Operating controls for Climatic* 96
- Operating controls for Climatronic* 100

(27) Depending on equipment fitted:
- Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) 113
- Selector lever (automatic DSG)* 123

(28) Indicator light for a switched off front seat passenger airbag* .. 169
(29) Park Assist* 117
(30) Front and rear parking aid* 116
(31) Depending on equipment fitted:
- Front ashtray* 85
- Storage compartment* 89

Note

- Equipment which is marked * is only standard on certain vehicle model versions or only suppliable as optional equipment for certain models.

- Vehicles with factory-fitted radio, mobile phone, navigation system, CD player etc. are supplied with separate instructions for operating such equipment.
- The arrangement of the controls and switches and the location of some items on right-hand drive models may differ from that shown in ⇒ page 7, fig. 1. The symbols on the controls and switches are the same as for left-hand drive models. ■

Instruments and Indicator/Warning Lights

General view of the instrument cluster

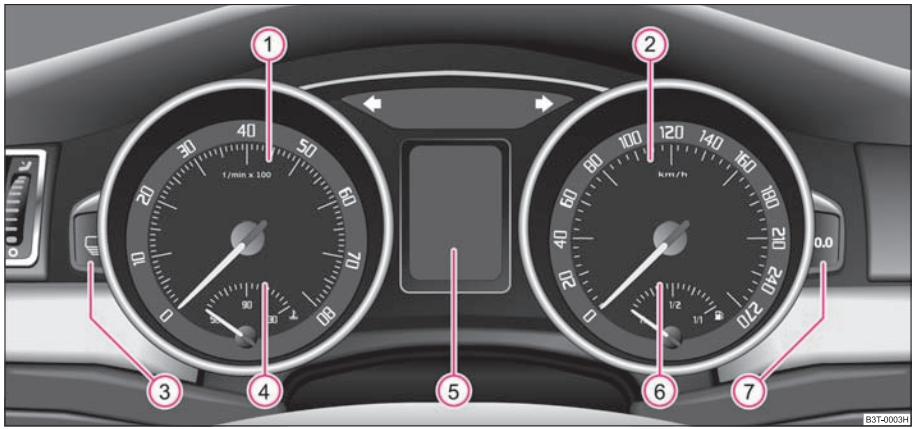

Fig. 2 Instrument cluster

1. Engine revolutions counter ⇒ page 11
2. Speedometer ⇒ page 11
3. Button for display mode:
   - Set hours / minutes
   - Activating / deactivating the second speed in mph or km/h*
   - Service interval - Display of the remaining number of days or miles to the next Inspection Service / Reset*[1)]
4. Coolant temperature gauge ⇒ page 11
5. Display:
   - with counter for distance driven ⇒ page 12
   - with Service Interval Display ⇒ page 12
   - with digital clock ⇒ page 14
   - with Multi-functional indicator* ⇒ page 14
   - with Information display* ⇒ page 19
6. Fuel gauge ⇒ page 11
7. Button for:
   - Reset trip counter for distance driven
   - Resetting Service Interval Display
   - Set hours / minutes
   - Activate / deactivate display mode ■

1) Valid for countries where the values are indicated in British measuring units.

Engine revolutions counter

The red zone of the rev counter scale (1) ⇒ page 10, fig. 2 indicates the range in which the engine control unit begins to limit the engine speed. The engine control unit restricts the engine speed to the steady limit value.

Shift into the next higher gear or select the selector lever position D of the automatic gearbox before reaching the red zone of the rev counter scale.

Avoid high engine speeds during the driving time and before the engine has been warmed up to operating temperature ⇒ page 187.

For the sake of the environment

Shifting up early helps you save fuel and reduce the operating noise of your vehicle. ■

Speedometer

Warning against excessive speeds*

An acoustic warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 kilometres per hour. The acoustic warning signal will switch off again when the vehicle speed goes below this speed limit.

Note

This function is only valid for some countries. ■

Coolant temperature gauge

The coolant temperature gauge (4) ⇒ page 10, fig. 2 operates only when the ignition is switched on.

In order to avoid any damage to the engine, please pay attention to the following notes regarding the temperature ranges:

Cold range

If the pointer is in the left-hand area of the scale it means that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid running at high engine speeds, at full throttle and at severe engine loads.

The operating range

The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the mid-range of the scale. The pointer may also move further to the right at high engine loads and high outside temperatures. This is not critical provided the warning symbol in the instrument cluster does not flash.

If the symbol in the instrument cluster flashes it means that either the coolant **temperature** is too high or the coolant **level** is too low. Observe the guidelines ⇒ page 31, “Coolant temperature/ Coolant quantity”.

WARNING

Pay attention to the warning notes ⇒ page 209, “Working in the engine compartment” before opening the bonnet and inspecting the coolant level.

Caution

Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the fresh air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant. There is then a risk of the engine overheating at high outside temperatures and high engine loads! ■

Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge (6) ⇒ page 10, fig. 2 only operates when the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 60 litres. The warning symbol in the instrument cluster lights up when the pointer reaches the reserve marking. There are now about 9 litres of fuel remaining in the tank. This symbol is a reminder for you, **that you must refuel**.

The following will be displayed in the information display*:

Please refuel! (Please refuel!)

An audible signal sounds as an additional warning signal.

Caution

Never run the fuel tank completely empty! An irregular fuel supply can result in poor ignition or misfiring. Unburnt fuel may get into the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.

Note

After refuelling, the fuel gauge may drop by approx. a fraction during dynamic driving (e.g. numerous curves, braking, uphill and downhill). When stopping the vehicle or during less dynamic driving, the fuel gauge indicates again the correct fuel quantity. This occurrence is not a fault. ■

Counter for distance driven

Fig. 3 Display: Counter for distance driven

The distance which you have driven with your vehicle is shown in kilometres (km). In some countries the measuring unit “mile” is used.

Reset button

If you hold the reset button (7) ⇒ page 10 pressed for about 1 second, the trip counter is set back to zero.

Trip counter for distance driven

The trip counter indicates the distance which you have driven ⇒ fig. 3 since this counter was last reset - in steps of 100 metres or 1/10 of a mile.

Counter for distance driven

The counter for distance driven ⇒ fig. 3 indicates the total distance in kilometers or miles which the vehicle has driven.

Fault display

If there is a fault in the instrument cluster **Error** will appear as a constant text in the display. Have the fault rectified as soon as possible by a specialist workshop.

WARNING

Never seek to adjust the trip counter for distance driven while driving for safety reasons!

Note

If vehicles which are fitted with the information display* the display of the second speed is activated in mph or km/h, this driving speed is indicated instead of the counter for the total distance driven. ■

Service Interval Display

Fig. 4 Service Interval Display: Note

Depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle, the text can differ on the display.

Service Interval Display

Before the next service interval a key symbol and the remaining kilometers are indicated after switching on the ignition ⇒ page 12, fig. 4. At the same time, a display appears regarding the remaining days until the next service interval.

The following will be displayed in the information display*:

Service in ... km or... days

The kilometre indicator or the days indicator reduces in steps of 100 km. or days until the service due date is reached.

A flashing key symbol and the text **Service** appears in the display for 20 seconds as soon as the due date for the service is reached.

The following will be displayed in the information display*:

Service now!

Display regarding the distance and days until the following service interval

You can use the button (3) to display the remaining distance driven and the days until the next service interval ⇒ page 10.

A key symbol and a display regarding the remaining kilometers appear for 10 second in the display. At the same time, a display appears regarding the remaining days until the next service interval.

On vehicles which are equipped with information display*, you can call up this information in the following menu on ⇒ page 19:

- **SETUP (Settings)**
- **Service Interval (Service)**
- **Info**

The following will be displayed in the information display* for 10 seconds:

Service in ... km or... days

Resetting Service Interval Display

It is only possible to reset the Service Interval Display, if a service message or at least a pre-warning is shown on the display of the instrument cluster.

We recommend having this resetting performed by a specialist garage.

The specialist garage:

- resets the memory of the display after the appropriate inspection,
- makes an entry in the Service schedule,
- affix the sticker with the entry of the following service interval to the side of the dash panel on the driver's side.

Reset the service interval displays by using the reset button (7) ⇒ page 10 on the trip counter.

On vehicles which are equipped with information display*, you can call up this information in the following menu on ⇒ page 19:

- **SETTINGS**
- **Service Interval (Service)**
- **Reset**

Caution

We recommend that you do not reset the Service Interval Display yourself otherwise this can result in the service interval display being incorrectly set, which may also result in problems with operation of your vehicle.

Note

- Never reset the display between service intervals otherwise this may result in incorrect readouts.
- information is retained in the Service Interval Display also after the battery of the vehicle is disconnected.
- If the instrument cluster is exchanged after a repair, the correct values must be entered in the counter for the Service Interval Display. This work is carried out by a specialist garage.

- The data displayed is the same after resetting the display with flexible service intervals (QG1) using the reset button as that for a vehicle with fixed service intervals (QG2). We therefore recommend having the Service Interval Display reset only by a Škoda Service Partner who is familiar with the procedure for resetting the display with a vehicle system tester.
- Please refer to the brochure Service schedule for extensive information about the service intervals. ■

Digital clock

The time is set with the buttons (3) and (7) ⇒ page 10, fig. 2.

Select the display which you wish to change with the button (3) and carry out the change with the button (7).

On vehicles which are fitted with information display*, the setting of the time in the menu **Time (Clock)** can be carried out ⇒ page 23.

WARNING

The clock should not be adjusted while driving for safety reasons but only when the vehicle is stationary! ■

Multi-functional indicator (onboard computer)*

Introduction

The multi-functional indicator appears in the display ⇒ page 15, fig. 5 or in the information display ⇒ page 19 depending on the equipment fitted to your vehicle.

The multi-functional indicator offers you a range of useful information.

The outside temperature	⇒ page 17
Driving time	⇒ page 17
Current fuel consumption	⇒ page 17
Average fuel consumption	⇒ page 17
Range	⇒ page 17
Distance driven	⇒ page 18
Average speed	⇒ page 18
Current speed*	⇒ page 18
Warning against excessive speeds*	⇒ page 18

On vehicles which are fitted out with information display*, it is possible to switch off the display of some information.

Caution

Pull out the ignition key while having contact with the display (for example when cleaning) in order to prevent any damage.

Note

- In certain national versions the displays appear in the Imperial system of measures.
- If the display of the second speed is activated in mph, the current speed* is not indicated in km/h on the display. ■

Memory

Fig. 5 Multi-functional indicator

The multi-functional indicator is equipped with two automatic memories. The selected memory is displayed in the middle of the display field ⇒ fig. 5.

The data of the single-trip memory (memory 1) is shown if a **1** appears in the display. A **2** shown in the display means that data relates to the total distance memory (memory 2).

Switching over the memory with the help of the button (B) ⇒ fig. 6 on the windscreen wiper lever or with the help of the button (D) on the multifunction steering wheel* ⇒ page 16.

Single-trip memory (memory 1)

The single-trip memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition. The memory will be is automatically erased, on the other hand, if the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**.

Total-trip memory (memory 2)

The total distance driven memory gathers data from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving or 9.999 kilometres driven. The memory is deleted when either of these limits is reached and the calculation starts from anew.

The total-trip memory will not, contrary to the single-trip memory, be deleted after a period of interruption of driving of 2 hours.

Note

All information in the memory **1** and **2** is erased if the battery of the vehicle is disconnected. ■

Operating with the buttons on the windshield wiper lever

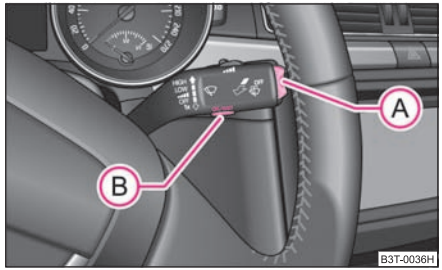

Fig. 6 Multi-functional indicator: Control elements

The rocker switch (A) and the button (B) are located in the grip of the window wiper lever ⇒ fig. 6.

Selecting the memory

– Short-term pressing of the button (B) allows to select the desired memory.

Selecting the functions

– Press the top or bottom rocker switch (A) for longer than 0.5 seconds. In this way, call up in sequence the individual functions of the multi-functional indicator.

Setting function to zero

– Select the memory you want.

– Press button (B) for more than 1 second.

The following readouts of the selected memory will be set to zero by button (B):

- average fuel consumption,
- distance driven,
- average speed,
- driving time.

You can only operate the multi-functional indicator when the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched on, the function displayed is the one which you last selected before switching off the ignition.

On vehicles fitted with the multifunction steering wheel*, the buttons (A) and (B) have been replaced with the rotary control on the multifunction steering wheel ⇒ fig. 7. ■

Operating with the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel*

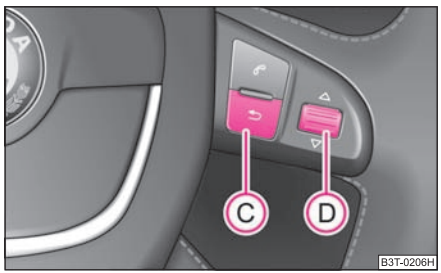

Fig. 7 Multi-functional indicator: Operating with the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel

Switching over and resetting is performed with the handwheel (D) ⇒ fig. 7.

Selecting the memory

– Short-term pressing of the button (D) allows to select the desired memory.

Selecting the functions

– By pressing the button (C), you can call up the menu of the multi-functional indicator.

– Turn the handwheel (D) upwards or downwards. In this way, call up in sequence the individual functions of the multi-functional indicator.

– Short-term pressing of the button (D) allows to select the highlighted function.

Setting function to zero

– Select the memory you want.

– Press the button (D) for more than 1 second.

The following readouts of the selected memory will be set to zero with the button (D):

- average fuel consumption,
- distance driven,
- average speed,
- driving time.

You can only operate the multi-functional indicator when the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched on, the function displayed is the one which you last selected before switching off the ignition. ■

Outside temperature

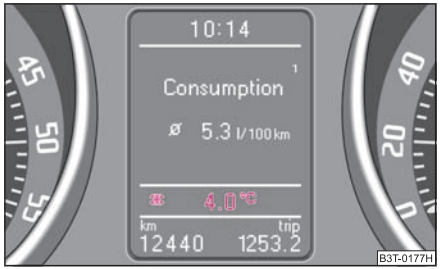

Fig. 8 The outside temperature

The outside temperature appears in the display when the ignition is switched on.

If the outside temperature drops below +4 °C, a snow flake symbol (warning signal for ice on the road) appears before the temperature indicator ⇒ fig. 8 and a warning signal sounds. After pressing the rocker switch (A) at the windshield wiper lever ⇒ page 15, fig. 6 or the button (C) at the multifunction steering wheel ⇒ page 16, fig. 7, the function shown last is indicated.

WARNING

Do not only rely upon the information given on the outside temperature display that there is no ice on the road. Please note that black ice may also be present on the road surface even at temperatures around +4 °C – warning, drive with care! ■

Driving time

The driving time which has elapsed since the memory was last erased, appears in the display. If you wish to measure the driving time as of a particular time, you must set the memory to zero at this moment in time by pressing the button (B) on the windshield wiper lever ⇒ page 15, fig. 6 or the handwheel (D) on the multifunction steering wheel* ⇒ page 16, fig. 7 for longer than 1 second.

The maximum distance indicated in both memories is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The indicator is set back to null if this period is exceeded. ■

Current consumption

The current fuel consumption level is shown in the display in litres/100 km. This information can help you to adapt your style of driving to the fuel consumption you wish to achieve.

The display appears in litres/hour if the vehicle is stationary or driving at a low speed.

The indicated value will be updated every 0,5 seconds while you are driving. ■

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption since the memory was last erased is shown in the display in litres/100 km ⇒ page 15. This information can help you to adapt your style of driving to the fuel consumption you wish to achieve.

If you wish to determine the average fuel consumption over a certain period of time you must set the memory to zero at the start of the measurement using the button (B) on the windshield wiper lever ⇒ page 15, fig. 6 or with the handwheel (D) on the multifunction steering wheel* ⇒ page 16, fig. 7. A zero appears in the display for the first 100 m you drive after erasing the memory.

The indicated value will be updated every 5 seconds while you are driving.

Note

The amount of fuel consumed will not be indicated. ■

Range

The estimated range in kilometres is shown on the display. It indicates the distance you can still drive with your vehicle based on the present level of fuel in the tank for the same style of driving.

The readout is shown in steps of 10 km. After lighting up of the indicator light for the fuel reserve the display is shown in steps of 5 km.

The fuel consumption for the last 50 km is taken as a basis for calculating the range. If you drive in a more economical manner from this moment on, the range will be increased accordingly.

If the memory is set to zero (after disconnecting the battery), the fuel consumption of 10 l/100 km is calculated for the range; afterwards the value is adapted accordingly to the style of driving. ■

Distance driven

The distance driven since the memory was last erased appears in the display ⇒ page 15. If you wish to measure the distance driven of a particular time, you must set the memory to zero at this moment in time by pressing the button (B) on the windshield wiper lever ⇒ page 15, fig. 6 or the handwheel (D) on the multifunction steering wheel* ⇒ page 16, fig. 7.

The maximum distance indicated in both switch positions is 9999 km. The indicator is set back to null if this period is exceeded. ■

Average speed

The average speed since the memory was last erased is shown in the display in km/hour ⇒ page 15. If you wish to determine the average vehicle speed over a certain period of time you must set the memory to zero at the start of the measurement using the button (B) on the windshield wiper lever ⇒ page 15, fig. 6 or with the handwheel (D) on the multifunction steering wheel* ⇒ page 16, fig. 7.

A zero appears in the display for the first 100 m you drive after erasing the memory.

The indicated value will be updated every 5 seconds while you are driving. ■

Current speed*

The current speed which is identical to the display of the speedometer, is indicated on the display (2) ⇒ page 10, fig. 2. ■

Warning against excessive speeds

Fig. 9 Speed setting

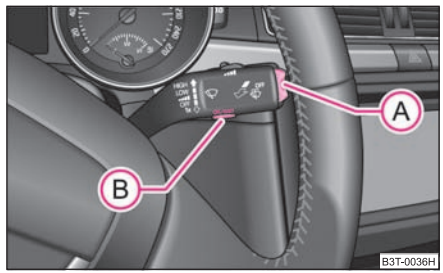

Fig. 10 Multi-functional indicator: Control elements

Warning against excessive speeds

This function enables you to set a speed limit, e.g. if you drive in town. A text in the display is intended to draw your attention to the fact that you have exceeded the set speed limit.

You can set the desired speed limit as follows:

- Select the menu **Speed warning --- km/h (warning at --- km/h)**.
- You can drive at the desired speed, e.g. 50 km/h
- Press the button (B) on the windshield wiper lever ⇒ fig. 10 or the handwheel (D) on the multifunction steering wheel* ⇒ page 16, fig. 7. **Speed warning 50 km/h (warning at 50 km/h)** is displayed on the information display* ⇒ fig. 9. ▶

If you now exceed the set speed limit, **Speed 50 km/h exceeded (speed 50 km/h exceeded)** will be shown on the display. This message is indicated for as long as the speed is reduced below the set limit or switch off the message by pressing the button (B) on the windshield wiper lever ⇒ page 18, fig. 10 or the handwheel (D) on the multifunction steering wheel* ⇒ page 16, fig. 7.

An audible signal sounds as an additional warning signal.

The set speed limit remains stored even after switching off the ignition. ■

Information display*

Introduction

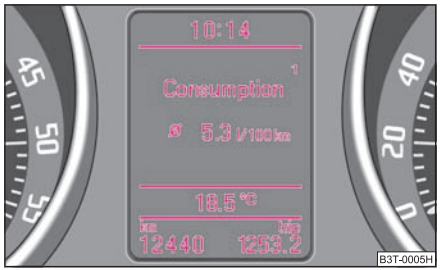

Fig. 11 Instrument cluster: Information display

The information display provides you with information in a convenient way concerning the **current operating state of your vehicle**. The information system also provides you with data (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle) relating to the radio, mobile phone, multi-functional indicator, navigation system and automatic gearbox.

Certain functions and operating conditions are always being checked on the vehicle when the ignition is switched on and also while driving.

Functional faults, if required repair work and other information are indicated by red symbols ⇒ page 22 and yellow symbols ⇒ page 23.

Lighting up of certain symbols is combined with an acoustic warning signal.

Information and texts giving warnings are also shown in the display ⇒ page 26.

The display of text is possible in the following languages:

Czech, English, German, French, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese and Chinese.

You can select the desired language in the setting menu.

The following information can be shown in the display (depending on the equipment installed on the vehicle):

Main menu	⇒ page 19
Door, luggage compartment door and bonnet ajar warning	⇒ page 21
Service Interval Display	⇒ page 12
Selector lever positions of the automatic DSG	⇒ page 123

Caution

Pull out the ignition key while having contact with the display (for example when cleaning) in order to prevent any damage. ■

Main menu

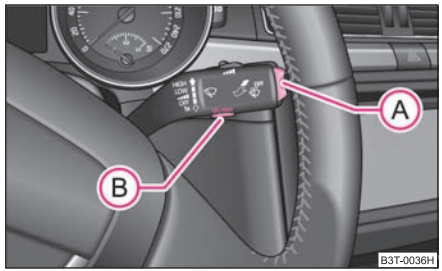

Fig. 12 Information display: Controls on the windshield wiper lever

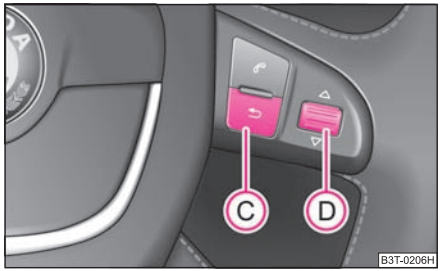

Fig. 13 Information display: Controls on the multifunction steering wheel

Operating with the buttons on the windshield wiper lever

– You can activate the **MAIN MENU** by pressing the rocker switch (A) ⇒ page 19, fig. 12 for more than 1 second.

– You can select the menu through the rocker switch (A). When the pushbutton (B) is briefly pressed, the information you have selected is displayed.

Operating with the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel

– You can activate the **MAIN MENU** by pressing the rocker switch (C) ⇒ fig. 13 for more than 1 second.

– You can select the individual menus by pressing the handwheel (D). After briefly pressing the handwheel (D), the desired menu is indicated.

– After briefly pressing the button (C) you can achieve a higher level, by pressing the button (C) for longer than 1 second, you can call up the **MAIN MENU**.

You can select the following information (depending on the equipment installed on the vehicle):

- **MFD (Onboard computer)** ⇒ page 14
  - Driving time
  - Current consumption
  - Average fuel consumption
  - Range
  - Distance driven
  - Average speed
  - Current speed
  - Warning against excessive speeds
- **Audio** ⇒ page 21
- **Navigation** ⇒ page 21
- **Phone** ⇒ page 138
- **Aux. Heating** ⇒ page 106
- **Vehicle status** ⇒ page 22
- **Setup** ⇒ page 23

The menu **Audio** is only displayed when the Radio* is switched on.

The menu **Navigation** is only displayed when the Navigation* is switched on.

Aux. Heating is only then displayed, if the vehicle is fitted with auxiliary heating*.

Note

- If warning messages are indicated in the information display, ⇒ page 21 ⇒ page 22, you must confirm them with the button (B) on the windshield wiper lever or with the button (D) on the multi-function steering wheel in order to call up the main menu.
- If you do not activate the information display at that moment, the menu shifts to one level higher every 10 seconds. ■

Door, luggage compartment door and bonnet ajar warning

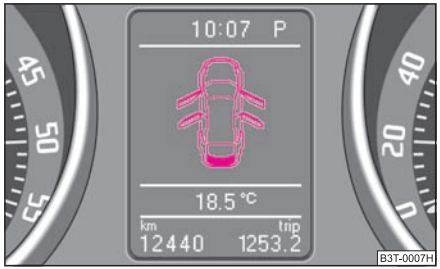

Fig. 14 Information display: Door warning

The door, luggage compartment door and bonnet ajar warning lights up when at least one of the three items door, luggage compartment or bonnet are not closed when the ignition is turned on. The symbol indicates which door is still open or whether the luggage compartment door or bonnet is **not closed** ⇒ fig. 14.

The symbol goes out as soon as the doors, luggage compartment door and bonnet are completely closed.

A warning signal sounds if the car is driven at a speed of more than 6km/hour and if the door or the luggage compartment door is open. ■

Audio

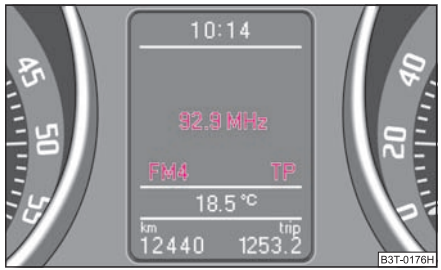

Fig. 15 Information display: Radio display

These displays **indicate** the normal information from the display of the radio*.

Operation of the radio* is described in separate operating instructions to be found in the on-board literature. ■

Navigation system*

The controls for the navigation system, radio, CD player are located in the centre console on both sides of the monitor screen. Navigation data is also shown in the information display of the instrument cluster.

Information and warning texts are displayed preferentially when the navigation system is switched on.

Operation of the navigation system is described in separate operating instructions to be found in the on-board literature. ■

Auto Check Control*

Car state

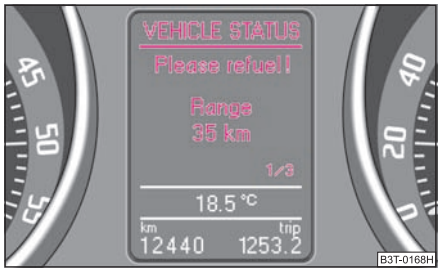

Fig. 16 Information display: Display of operational fault

The Auto Check Control carries out a check of certain functions and vehicle components. The check is performed constantly when the ignition is switched on, both when the vehicle is stationary, as well as when driving.

Some operational faults, urgent repairs, service work or other information appear in the display of the instrument cluster. The displays are shown with a red or yellow light symbol depending on the priority of the message.

The red symbols indicate **danger** (priority 1) while the yellow symbols indicate a **warning** (priortity 2). Information for the driver may also appear in addition to the symbols ⇒ page 26.

There is at least one error message when the term **Vehicle status** is displayed in the menu. After selecting this menu the first of the error messages is displayed. Several error messages are shown on the display under the message e.g. **1/3** ⇒ fig. 16. This display indicates that the first of a total of three error messages should be displayed. The respective messages are displayed one after the other in an interval of 5 seconds. Check as soon as possible the displayed error messages.

As long as the operational faults are not rectified, the symbols are always indicated again. After the first display, the symbols are indicated without information for the driver.

If a fault occurs, a warning signal will also sound in addition to the symbol and text in the display:

- Priority 1 - three warning signals
- Priority 2 - one warning signal ■

Red symbols

A red symbol signals danger.

Fig. 17 Information display: Oil pressure is low

Proceed as follows if a red symbol is displayed:

- Stop the vehicle.
- Switch the engine off.
- Investigate the function indicated.
- Obtain professional assistance.

Meaning of the red symbols:

	Engine oil pressure too low	⇒ page 30

Three successive warning signals will sound if a red symbol appears. ■

Yellow symbols

Fig. 18 Information display: Brake pad worn

Check the relevant function as soon as possible.

The meaning of the yellow symbols:

	Check engine oil level, engine oil sensor faulty	⇒ page 35
	Brake pad worn	⇒ page 33

One warning signal will sound if a yellow symbol appears.

If several operational faults of priority 2 exist, the symbols appear one after the other and are each illuminated for about 5 seconds. ■

Set-up

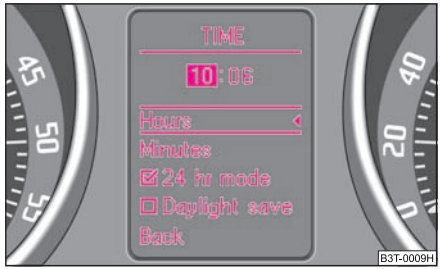

Fig. 19 Setting the clock

You can change certain settings by means of the information display. The current setting is shown on the information display in the respective menu at the top below the line ⇒ fig. 19.

You can select the following information (depending on the equipment installed on the vehicle):

- **MFD Data (MFA DATA)**
- **Convenience**
- **Lights & Vision**
- **Time**
- **Winter tyres**
- **Language**
- **Units**
- **Assistant**
- **Alternative speed displayed (Second speed)**
- **Automatic light (Automat. Lights)**
- **Service Interval (Service)**
- **Factory Setting**
- **Back**

After selecting the menu **Back** you will reach one level higher in the menu.

Displays of the MFA

Here you can switch off or on certain displays of the multi-functional indicator.

Comfort*

You can set the following functions (depending on the equipment installed on the vehicle):

Rain closing	On vehicles with rain sensor you can switch on or off the function for automatic closing of the windows and the sliding/tilting roof in case of rain and locked vehicle. If it is not raining and the function is set, the windows including the sliding/tilting roof are closed automatically after approx. 12 hours.
Door open	Here you can switch on or off the functions for opening a single door and automatic closing.
ATA confirm	Here you can set if a signal tone should sound additionally when activating or deactivating the anti-theft alarm system .
Window op.	Here you can set the convenience mode only for the driver window or for all the windows.
Mirror down	Here you can switch on or off the function for mirror adjustment on the front passenger side when engaging the reverse gear .
Mirror adjust.	Here you can switch on or off the function for left and right exterior mirror adjustment simultaneously.
Factory setting	After selecting this menu the convenience setting is reset to factory setting. The following is displayed in the information display: **Factory setting for convenience is set** .

Lights and Visibility

Here you can set how long the light should stay on for the function Coming/Leaving Home and the intensity of the footwell lighting. Furthermore you can here switch on or off the function daylight driving lights and convenience turn signal.

After selecting the menu **Factory setting** the factory setting is established again.

Time

Here you can set the time, the time format (12 or 24 hour indicator) and the time change summer/winter time.

Winter tyres

Here you can set at which speed a warning signal should sound. This function is used for e.g winter tyres with the permissible maximum speed less than the maximum speed of the vehicle.

When exceeding the speed, the following is displayed on the information display*:

Snow tyres max. speed ... km/h (Winter tyres maximum ... km/h)

Language

Here you can set in which language the warning and information texts should be displayed.

Measures

Here you can set the units for temperature, consumption and distance driven.

Assistant

Here you can adjust the tones of the acoustic signals of the parking aid*.

Second speed

Here you can switch on the display of the second speed in mph or in km/h[2)].

Service

Here you can have the kilometers still to be driven and the days until the following service interval shown and the Service Interval Display reset.

Factory Setting

After selecting the menu **Factory Setting** the factory setting of the information display is established again. ■

2) Valid for countries where the values are indicated in British measuring units.

Information display in the rear centre console

Fig. 20 Centre console at rear: Information display

The time and the outside temperature is displayed on the information display in the rear centre console when the ignition is switched on ⇒ fig. 20.

The values are taken over by the instrument cluster. ■

Warning lights

Overview

The warning lights indicate certain functions or faults.

Fig. 21 Instrument cluster with warning lights

	Turn signal lights (to the left)	⇒ page 27
	Turn signal lights (to the right)	⇒ page 27
	Fog lights	⇒ page 28
	Main beam	⇒ page 28
	Low beam	⇒ page 28

	Rear fog light	⇒ page 28
	Speed regulating system	⇒ page 28
	Failure of the light bulbs	⇒ page 28
	Adaptive headlights*	⇒ page 28
	Diesel particle filter* (diesel engine)	⇒ page 28
	Airbag system	⇒ page 29

	Control system for exhaust	⇒ page 29
	Electromechanical power steering	⇒ page 29
	Engine oil pressure	⇒ page 30
EPC	EPC fault light (petrol engine)	⇒ page 30
	Glow plug system (diesel engine)	⇒ page 30
	Coolant temperature/coolant level	⇒ page 31
	Traction control system (TCS)	⇒ page 31
	Electronic stability programme (ESP)*	⇒ page 32
	Selector lever lock*	⇒ page 32
	Tyre pressure*	⇒ page 32
	Antilock brake system (ABS)	⇒ page 32
	Bonnet	⇒ page 33
	Seat belt warning light	⇒ page 33
	Brake pad wear*	⇒ page 33
	Boot lid	⇒ page 33
	Open door	⇒ page 34
	Fluid level in windshield washer system	⇒ page 34
	Brake system	⇒ page 34
	Dynamo	⇒ page 34
	Engine oil level	⇒ page 35
	Fuel reserve	⇒ page 35

WARNING

- **If you do not pay attention to the warning lights coming on and the corresponding descriptions and warning notes, this may result in severe body injuries or major vehicle damage.**
- **The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. There is a risk of injuries, scalding, accidents and fire when working in the engine compartment, e.g. inspecting and replenishing oil and other fluids. It is also essential to observe all warnings ⇒ page 209, "Working in the engine compartment".**

Note

- The arrangement of the indicator light is dependent on the model version. The symbols shown in the following functional description are to be found as indicator lights in the instrument cluster.
- Operational faults are shown in the instrument cluster as red symbols (priority 1 - danger) or yellow symbols (priority 2 - warning). ■

Turn signal system

Either the left ⇦ or right ⇨ indicator light flashes depending on the position of the turn signal lever.

The indicator light flashes at twice its normal rate if a turn signal light fails. This does not apply when towing a trailer.

Switching off the hazard warning light system is switched on will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both indicator lights to flash.

Further information about the turn signal system ⇒ page 60. ■

Fog lights

The warning light comes on when the fog lights are operating ⇒ page 57. ■

Main beam

The indicator light comes on when the main beam is selected or also when the headlight flasher is operated.

Further information about the main beam ⇒ page 60. ■

Low beam

The warning light comes on when low beam is selected ⇒ page 53. ■

Rear fog light

The warning light comes on when the rear fog lights are operating ⇒ page 58. ■

Cruise control system*

The warning light lights up, when operating the speed regulating system. ■

Failure of the light bulbs

The warning light comes on if a light bulb is damaged:

- up to 2 seconds after the ignition is switched on;
- when switching on the defective light bulb.

The following text e.g will be displayed in the information display*:

Check front right dipped beam!

The rear side lights and the licence plate lighting require several light bulbs. The indicator light only lights up if all light bulbs of the licence plate lighting or the parking light (in one rear light unit) are defective. Check regularly the function of the light bulbs. ■

Adaptive headlights*

If the warning light flashes for 1 minute while driving or after switching on the ignition and a warning signal sounds, a fault of the adaptive headlights is confirmed.

Further information ⇒ page 56. ■

Diesel particle filter* (diesel engine)

If the warning light comes on, this means that soot has accumulated in the diesel particle filter because of the frequent short distances.

In order to clean the diesel particle filter, the vehicle should be driven at an even speed of at least 60 km/h at engine speeds of 1 800 – 2 500 rpm for at least 15 minutes or until the warning light goes out with the 4th or 5th gear engaged (automatic gearbox: position S) when the traffic situation permits it. This increases the exhaust temperature and the soot deposited in the diesel particle filter is burnt.

Always pay attention to the valid speed limits ⇒ ⚠.

The warning light goes out after the successful cleaning of the diesel particle filter.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning light does not go out and the warning light begins to flash. In the information display* appears **Diesel-particle Owner's manual**. Afterwards the engine control unit shifts the engine into the emergency mode, which only has a reduced power output. After switching the ignition off and on again the warning light comes on.

Have the vehicle inspected without delay by your specialist garage.

WARNING

- **If you do not pay attention to the warning light coming on and the corresponding descriptions and warning notes, this may result in injuries or major vehicle damage.**
- **Always adjust your speed to suit weather, road, region and traffic conditions. The route indicated by the warning light must not tempt you to disregard the national regulations for road traffic.**

Caution

As long as the warning light lights up, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and in certain circumstances a power reduction of the engine.

Note

Further information about diesel particle filter ⇒ page 186. ■

Airbag system

Monitoring the airbag system

The warning light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

There is a fault in the system if the warning light does not go out or flashes while driving ⇒ . This also applies if the warning light does not come on when the ignition is switched on.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Airbag fault!

The functionality of the airbag system is also monitored electronically, when one airbag has been switched off

Front, side and head airbags or belt tensioner which have been switched off using the vehicle system tester:

- The warning light lights up for 4 seconds after switching on the ignition and then flashes again for 12 seconds afterwards in 2 second intervals.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Airbag/belt tensioner deactivated!

Front passenger airbags switched off using the switch for front passenger airbags* in stowage compartment on the front passenger side:

- The warning light comes on for 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.
- Switching off airbags is indicated in the middle of the dash panel by the lighting up of the warning light **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF (airbag switched off)** ⇒ page 169.

WARNING

Have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage if a fault exists. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident. ■

Control system for exhaust

The warning light comes on after the ignition has been switched on.

If the warning light does not go out after starting the engine or it lights up when driving, a fault exists in an exhaust relevant component. The engine management system selects an emergency programme which enables you to drive to the nearest specialist garage by adopting a gentle style of driving. ■

Electromechanical power steering

The warning light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

If the warning light after switching on the ignition or when driving lights up continuously, a fault exists in the electromechanical power steering.

- If the **yellow** warning light lights up, this indicates a partial failure of the power steering and the steering forces can be greater.

- If the **red** warning light lights up, this indicates a complete failure of the power steering and the steering assist has failed (significantly higher steering forces).

Further information ⇒ page 184.

WARNING

Contact your specialist garage if the power steering is defective.

Note

- If the yellow warning light goes out after starting the engine again and a short drive, it is not necessary to visit a specialist garage.
- If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the yellow warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light must go out after driving a short distance. ■

Engine oil pressure

The warning light comes on for a few seconds [3] when the ignition is switched on.

Stop the vehicle and switch the engine off if the warning light does not go off after the engine has started or flashes while driving. Check the oil level and top up with oil as necessary ⇒ page 212.

An audible signal sounds three times as an additional warning signal.

Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible under the conditions prevailing to top up with oil. **Keep the engine switched off** and obtain professional assistance from a specialist garage, otherwise it could lead to severe engine damage.

Do not drive any further if the warning light flashes even if the oil is at the correct level. Do not run the engine not at idling speed either. Contact the nearest specialist garage to obtain professional assistance.

[3] The warning light on vehicles fitted with information display does not come on after switching the ignition on, but only if a fault exists or the engine oil level is too low.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Oil Pressure Engine off! Owner's manual

WARNING

- **If you must stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic and switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning light system.**
- **The red oil pressure light is not an oil level indicator! One should therefore check the oil level at regular intervals, preferably after every refueling stop.** ■

EPC fault light EPC (petrol engine)

The **EPC** (Electronic Power Control) warning light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

If the warning light **EPC** does not go out or lights up after starting the engine, a fault exists in the engine control. The engine management system selects an emergency programme which enables you to drive to the nearest specialist garage by adopting a gentle style of driving.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Engine fault Workshop! ■

Glow plug system (diesel engine)

The warning light lights up for a **cold** engine when switching on the ignition (pre-heat position) **2** ⇒ page 111. Start the engine after the indicator light goes out.

The glow plug indicator light will come on for about 1 second if the engine is at a **normal operating temperature** or if the outside temperature is above +5°C. This means that you can start the engine **right away**.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the **warning light does not come on at all** or **lights up continuously**. Contact a specialist garage as soon as possible to obtain assistance.

If the **warning light** begins **to flash** while driving, a fault exists in the engine control. The engine management system selects an emergency programme which enables you to drive to the nearest specialist garage by adopting a gentle style of driving.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Engine fault Workshop! ■

Coolant temperature/ Coolant quantity

The warning light comes on for a few seconds [4] when the ignition is switched on.

The coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level too low if the warning light does not go out or flashes while driving.

3 peeps sound as an additional warning signal.

In this case stop and switch the engine off and check the coolant level; top up the coolant as necessary.

Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible under the conditions prevailing to top up with coolant. **Keep the engine switched off** and obtain professional assistance from a specialist garage, otherwise it could lead to severe engine damage.

If the coolant is within the specified range, the increased temperature may be caused by an operating problem at the coolant fan. Check the fuse for the coolant fan, replace it if necessary ⇒ page 242, "Fuse assignment in engine compartment - version 1" or ⇒ page 244, "Fuse assignment in engine compartment - version 2".

Do not continue driving if the warning light does not go off although the fluid is at the correct level and also the fuse of the fan is in proper order. Contact a specialist garage to obtain assistance.

Please also refer to the additional instructions ⇒ page 213, "Cooling system".

[4] The warning light on vehicles fitted with information display does not come on after switching the ignition on, but only if the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Check coolant! Owner's manual

WARNING

- **If you must stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic and switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning light system ⇒ page 59.**
- **Take care when opening the coolant expansion bottle. If the engine is hot, the cooling system is pressurized – risk of scalding! It is best to allow the engine to cool down before removing the cap.**
- **Do not touch the coolant fan The coolant fan may switch on automatically even if the ignition is off.** ■

Traction control system (TCS)

The warning light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

The warning light comes on when driving when a control cycle is activated.

The warning light will come on and remains on if the TCS is switched off or if there is a fault in the system.

The fact that the TCS system operates together with the ABS means that the TCS warning light will also come on if the ABS system is not operating properly.

If the warning light comes on immediately after starting the engine, the TCS system can be switched off for technical reasons. In this case, the TCS system can be switched on again by switching the ignition on and off. If the warning light goes out, the TCS system is fully functional again.

Further information about the TCS ⇒ page 181, "Traction control system (TCS)".

Note

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light must go out after driving a short distance. ■

Electronic stability programme (ESP)*

The warning light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

Components of the ESP system also include the Traction Control System (TCS), Electronic Differential Lock (EDL), and the Antilock Brake System ABS (ABS).

The warning light comes on when driving when a control cycle is activated.

The warning light will come on and remains on if the ESP is switched off or if there is a fault in the system.

The fact that the ESP system operates together with the ABS means that the ESP warning light will also come on if the ABS system is not operating properly.

If the warning light comes on immediately after starting the engine, the ESP system can be switched off for technical reasons. In this case, the ESP system can be switched on again by switching the ignition on and off. If the warning light goes out, the ESP system is fully functional again.

Further information on the ESP ⇒ page 179, “Electronic stability programme (ESP)*”.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)*

The EDL is a part of the ESP. A fault in the EDL is indicated by the ESP warning light in the instrument cluster. Have the vehicle inspected without delay by a Škoda Service Partner. Further information on the EDL ⇒ page 180, “Electronic Differential Lock (EDS)*”.

Note

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light must go out after driving a short distance. ■

Selector lever lock*

If the **green** warning light lights up, operate the brake pedal. This is necessary, in order to be able to move the selector lever out of the position **P** or **N**. ■

Tyre inflation pressure*

The warning light lights up, if there is a substantial drop in inflation pressure in one of the tyres. Reduce the speed and check or correct as soon as possible the inflation pressure in the tyres ⇒ page 222.

If the warning light flashes, there is a system fault. Visit the nearest specialist garage and have the fault rectified.

Further information about tyre pressure-control system ⇒ page 185.

WARNING

- **When the warning light lights up, immediately reduce the speed and avoid sudden steering and brake manoeuvres. Please stop the vehicle without delay at the nearest possible stop and inspect the tyres and their inflation pressures.**
- **Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light can be delayed or does not light up at all.**

Note

If the battery has been disconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light must go out after driving a short distance. ■

Antilock brake system (ABS)

The warning light shows the functionality of the ABS.

The warning light comes on for a few seconds after the ignition has been switched on or when starting the engine. The warning light goes out after an automatic check sequence has been completed.

A fault in the ABS

The system is not functioning properly if the ABS warning light does not go out within a few seconds after switching on the ignition, does not light up at all or lights up while driving. The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system. Visit ▶

a specialist garage as quickly as possible and adjust your style of driving in the meantime since you will not know how great the damage is.

Further information about ABS ⇒ page 183, “Antilock brake system (ABS)”.

A fault in the entire brake system

If the ABS warning light (ABS) comes on together with the brake system warning light (!) (handbrake must be released), there is a fault not only in the ABS but also in another part of the brake system ⇒ ⚠.

WARNING

- **If the brake system warning light (!) comes on together with the ABS warning light (ABS) stop the vehicle immediately and check the brake fluid level in the reservoir ⇒ page 215, “Brake fluid”. If the fluid level has dropped below the MIN marking, do not drive any further – risk of accident! Contact a Škoda dealer to obtain professional assistance.**
- **Pay attention to the following instructions ⇒ page 209, “Working in the engine compartment” before checking the brake fluid level and opening the bonnet.**
- **If the brake fluid is at the correct level, the ABS control function has failed. The rear wheels may then block very rapidly when braking. In certain circumstances, this can result in the rear end of the car breaking away – risk of skidding! Drive carefully to the nearest specialist garage and have the fault rectified.** ■

Bonnet *

The warning light comes on if the bonnet is unlocked. If the engine bonnet unlocks while driving, the warning light lights up and an audible signal sounds.

The warning light comes on even when the ignition is switched off. The warning light lights up for a maximum of 5 minutes.

On vehicles with information display* this warning light is replaced by a vehicle symbol ⇒ page 21, fig. 14. ■

Seat belt warning light

The warning light comes on after the ignition is switched on as a reminder for the driver and front passenger to fasten the seat belt. The warning light only goes out if the driver or front passenger has fastened his seat belt.

If the seat belt has not been fastened by the driver or front passenger, a permanent warning signal sounds at vehicle speeds greater than 20 km/h and simultaneously the warning light flashes.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next 90 seconds, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light lights up permanently.

Further information on the seat belts ⇒ page 154, “Seat belts”. ■

Thickness of the brake pads *

The warning light comes on for a few seconds [5] when the ignition is switched on.

If the warning light comes on, contact a specialist garage immediately and have the brake pads on **all of the wheels** inspected.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Check brake pads! ■

Boot lid *

The warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on if the luggage compartment door is open. If the boot lid opens while driving, the warning light lights up and an audible signal sounds.

An audible signal sounds as an additional warning signal.

[5] The warning light on vehicles fitted with information display does not come on after switching the ignition on, but only if a fault exists.

The warning light comes on even when the ignition is switched off. The warning light lights up for a maximum of 5 minutes.

On vehicles with information display* this warning light is replaced by a vehicle symbol ⇒ page 21, fig. 14. ■

Open door

The warning light comes on if one or several doors are opened or if the boot lid is opened. If one of the doors opens while driving, the warning light lights up and an audible signal sounds.

The warning light comes on even when the ignition is switched off. The warning light lights up for a maximum of 5 minutes.

On vehicles with information display* this warning light is replaced by a vehicle symbol ⇒ page 21, fig. 14. ■

Liquid in reservoir for windscreen washer system

The warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on if there is insufficient fluid in the windshield washer system. Top up with liquid ⇒ page 220.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Add wash fluid! ■

Brake system

The warning light flashes or comes on if the brake fluid level is too low, if there is a fault in the ABS or if the handbrake is applied.

If the warning light flashes and an audible signal sounds three times (handbrake is not applied), **stop** and check the brake fluid level ⇒ .

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Brake fluid Owner's manual

If there is a fault in the ABS which also influences the function of the brake system (e.g. distribution of brake pressure), the ABS warning light comes on and at the same time the brake system warning light starts flashing . Be aware that not only the ABS but also another part of th brake system is defective ⇒ .

An audible signal sounds three times as an additional warning signal.

One should get used to high pedal forces, long braking distances and long free play of the brake pedal when driving to the next specialist garage.

For further information on the brake system ⇒ page 182, “Brakes”.

Handbrake applied

The warning light also comes on if the handbrake is applied. An audible warning is also given if you drive the vehicle for at least 3 seconds at a speed of more than 6 km/h.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Release parking brake!

WARNING

- **Pay attention to the following instructions ⇒ page 209, “Working in the engine compartment” before checking the brake fluid level and opening the bonnet.**
- **If the brake system warning light does not go out a few seconds after switching on the ignition or comes on when driving, stop immediately and check the brake fluid in the reservoir ⇒ page 215, “Brake fluid”. If the fluid level has dropped below the MIN marking, do not drive any further – risk of accident! Contact a Škoda dealer to obtain professional assistance.** ■

Alternator

The warning light comes on after the ignition has been switched on. It should go out after the engine has started.

If the warning light does not go out after the engine has started, or comes on when driving, drive to the nearest specialist garage. The vehicle battery will be discharged in this case so switch off all non-essential electrical components.

Caution

If the warning light comes on when driving and in addition the warning light (cooling system fault) also comes on in display, you must then stop the car immediately and switch the engine off - risk of engine damage! ■

Engine oil level*

Warning light lights up

If the warning light lights up, the quantity of oil in the engine is probably too low. Check as soon as possible the oil level or top up ⇒ page 212 with engine oil.

A peep sounds as an additional warning signal.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Check oil level!

The warning light will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the warning light will come on again after driving about 100 km.

Warning light flashes

A fault on the engine oil level sensor is indicated additionally by an audible signal and the warning light coming on several times after the ignition has been switched on.

In this case have the engine inspected without delay by a specialist garage.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Oil sensor Workshop! ■

Fuel reserve

The warning light comes on, if the fuel level is still below 9 litres.

An audible signal sounds as an additional warning signal.

The following text will be displayed in the information display*:

Please refuel! Range...km

Note

The Text in the information display* goes out only after refuelling and driving a short distance. ■

Unlocking and locking

Key

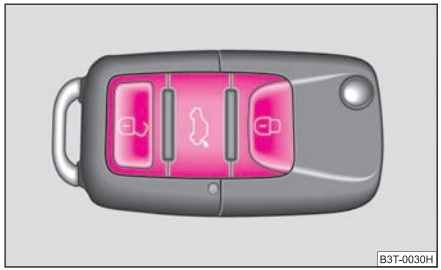

Fig. 22 Radio-operated key

Two keys with remote control are provided with the vehicle ⇒ fig. 22.

WARNING

- **Always withdraw the key whenever you leave the vehicle – even if it is only for a short time. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. The children might otherwise start the engine or operate electrical equipment (e.g. power windows) – risk of injury!**
- **Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop. The steering lock might otherwise engage unintentionally – risk of accident!**

Caution

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore protect them against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean as impurities (textile fibres, dust etc.) have a negative effect on proper operation of the keys and the ignition lock.

Note

Please approach a Škoda Service Partner if you lose a key since he can obtain a new one for you. ■

Changing the battery of the radio remote control

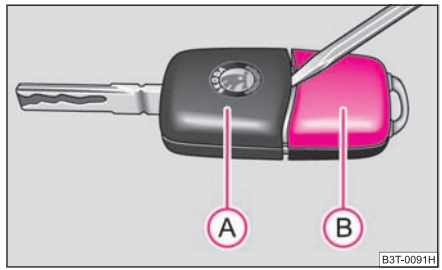

Fig. 23 Disconnect key with radio remote control

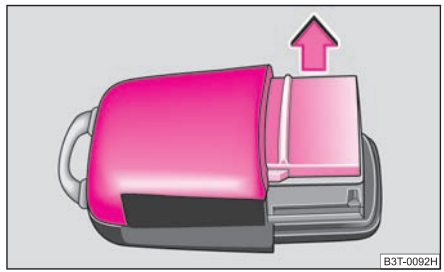

Fig. 24 Cover of the transmitter housing

Each radio-operated key contains a battery which is housed in the cover (B) of the transmitter housing ⇒ fig. 23. We recommend that you have ▶

the batteries of the key replaced by a Škoda Service Partner. You should, however, proceed as follows if you wish to replace the battery yourself:

- Fold open the key.
- Use a thin screwdriver to carefully lever off the front part of the key (A) ⇒ page 36, fig. 23 from the transmitter housing (B).
- Take off the cover of the transmitter housing ⇒ page 36, fig. 24 in direction of arrow.
- Take the used battery out of the housing cover.
- Insert the new battery. Ensure that the "+" symbol on the battery is facing downwards. The correct polarity is also shown on the cover of the transmitter housing.
- Insert cover with battery in place at the rear of the transmitter housing and press both parts together.
- Insert the transmitter housing into the front part of the key so that the two parts lock into each other.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of an old battery in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.
- If it is still not be possible to unlock or lock the vehicle with the remote control even after replacing the battery this means that the system has to be synchronised ⇒ page 45. ■

Electronic immobiliser

The electronic immobiliser prevents the vehicle being operated by an unauthorised person.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock. The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when you withdraw the ignition key from the lock.

Note

It is only possible to start the engine of your car with a Genuine Škoda key with the matching code. ■

Child safety lock

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside.

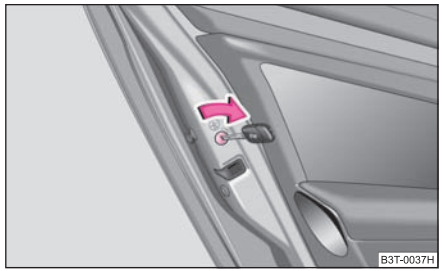

Fig. 25 Child safety locks on the rear doors

The rear doors are equipped with a child safety lock. You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

Switching child safety lock on

– Use the vehicle key to turn the slit in the rear door to the left in the direction of the arrow ⇒ page 37, fig. 25.

Switching child safety lock off

– Use the vehicle key to turn the slit to the right against the direction of the arrow.

So long as the child safety lock is switched on it is not possible to open the door from the inside with the door opening lever. In this case the door can be opened only from the outside. ■

Central locking system

Description

Unlocking or locking the vehicle causes **all** the doors and the fuel filler flap to be unlocked or locked at the same time by the central locking system. The boot lid is unlocked when opening. Afterwards you can open the boot lid by pressing the handle on the lower edge of the boot lid ⇒ page 41.

Operation of the central locking system is possible:

- by using the remote control ⇒ page 44,
- using the buttons for the central locking system ⇒ page 39,
- from the outside using the vehicle key ⇒ page 40, “Emergency unlocking and locking of the driver's door”.

The indicator light in the driver's door

After locking the vehicle the indicator light flashes for 2 seconds fast, then more slowly.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system ⇒ page 39 is not operating, the indicator light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash slowly after about 30 seconds.

If the indicator light first of all flashes fast for about 2 seconds, afterwards lights up for about 30 seconds and then flashes slowly, there is a fault in the system of the central locking or the interior monitor and in the towing protection monitoring* ⇒ page 46. Contact a specialist garage to obtain assistance.

Convenience operation of windows

One can open and close the windows when opening and closing the vehicle ⇒ page 49.

Opening a single door*

This function allows one to just unlock the driver's door. The other doors and the fuel filler flap remain locked and are only unlocked after repetitive unlocking.

You can have the function opening a single door activated by a Škoda Service Partner on request or you can activate it yourself with the aid of the information display* ⇒ page 23.

Automatic locking*

All the doors and the boot lid are locked automatically once the car reaches a speed of about 15 km/h.

If the ignition key is withdrawn, the car is then automatically unlocked again. In addition, it is possible for the driver or front passenger to unlock the car by pressing the central locking button ⇒ page 39 or by pulling the door opening lever.

You can have the function of the automatic locking activated by a specialist garage on request or you can activate it yourself with the aid of the information display* ⇒ page 23.

WARNING

Locking the doors prevents involuntary opening in an exceptional situation (an accident). Locked doors prevent unwanted entry into the vehicle from outside, for example at road crossings. Locked doors do, however, make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – danger to life!

Note

- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.
- Only the driver's door can be unlocked using the key if the central locking system fails ⇒ page 40, "Emergency unlocking and locking of the driver's door". You can lock or unlock manually the other doors and the boot lid.
  - Emergency locking of the door ⇒ page 41.
  - Emergency unlocking of the boot lid ⇒ page 43. ■

Safe securing

The central locking system is equipped with a **safe securing** system. Locking the vehicle from the outside causes the door locks to be automatically blocked. It is not possible to open the doors with the door handle either from the inside or from the outside. This acts as an effective deterrent for attempts to break into your vehicle.

You can deactivate the safe securing system by locking two times within 2 seconds.

If the safe securing system is not operating:

- the indicator light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash slowly after about 30 seconds,
- is the filler flap locked.

The safe securing system is again activated the next time the vehicle is unlocked and locked again.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is deactivated, you can open the vehicle from the inside by pulling on the handle.

WARNING

If the vehicle is locked from the outside and the safe securing system is activated, there must not be any person and animals in the vehicle as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – hazard!

Note

The anti-theft alarm system* is also activated with the deactivated safe securing system when locking the vehicle. The interior monitor* is however not activated. ■

Buttons for the central locking system

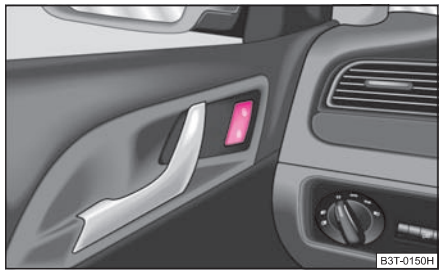

Fig. 26 Central locking switch

If the vehicle was not locked from outside, you can also unlock and lock it with the rocker switch on the handle of the driver or front passenger door even without the ignition switched on.

Locking all doors and the boot lid

– Press on the bottom part of the button ⇒ fig. 26. The symbol in the button comes on.

Unlocking all doors and the boot lid

– Press on the top part of the button ⇒ fig. 26. The symbol goes out in the button.

The following applies if you have locked your vehicle using the central locking system:

- It is not possible to open the doors or the boot lid from the outside (safety feature, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights etc.).
- You can unlock the doors individually from the inside and open them by pulling the door opening lever.
- If at least one door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked from the inside in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

By pressing and holding down the top and bottom part of the switch in the driver's door, you can conveniently close or open the windows.

WARNING

The central locking system also operates if the ignition is switched off. All the doors and the boot lid are locked. Children should never be left unattended in the vehicle since it is difficult to provide assistance from the outside when the doors are locked. Locked doors make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – hazard!

Note

The door opening lever and the buttons for the central locking system do not operate if the safe securing system is activated. ■

Emergency unlocking and locking of the driver's door

If the key does not operate, the driver's door can be unlocked or locked manually using the remote control or the central locking system.

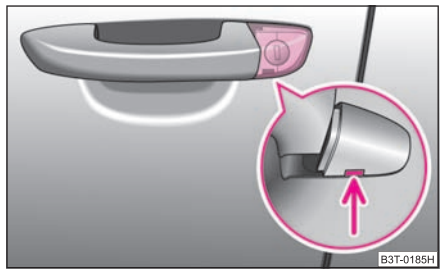

Fig. 27 Handle on the driver's door: covered locking cylinder

– Pull on the handle.
– Guide the vehicle key into the recess on the bottom side of the cover and lift it up to the top.
– Put the vehicle key into the locking cylinder and unlock or lock the vehicle. ■

Emergency locking of the doors

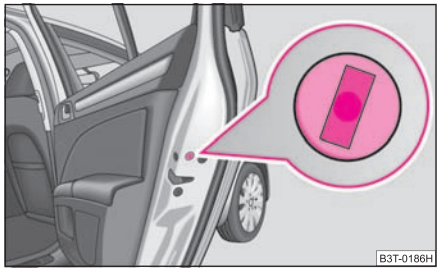

Fig. 28 Rear door: Emergency locking of the door

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the face side of the doors which have no locking cylinder; it is only visible after opening the door. Lock the doors using the vehicle key.

Locking

- Remove the panel ⇒ fig. 28.
- Guide the key into the slot and turn it to the outside.
- Re-insert the panel.

After closing the door, you can no longer open it from outside. If the child safety lock is not switched on, it is possible to open the door from the inside by pulling on the door handle. If the child safety lock is switched on, it is necesary to also open the door from outside besides pulling on the inner door handle. ■

Twindoor - small boot lid

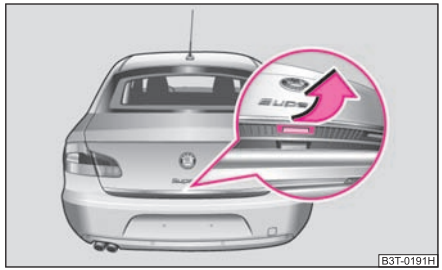

Fig. 29 Handle of boot lid

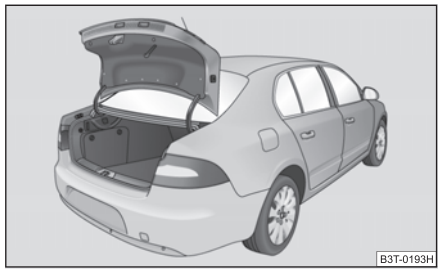

Fig. 30 Boot lid

After unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the key ⇒ page 40 you can open the small boot lid ⇒ fig. 30.

Open small boot lid

- Press on the handle at the bottom side of the boot lid ⇒ fig. 29, the boot lid lifts up automatically ⇒ fig. 30.

Close small boot lid

- Pull the boot lid down and close it with a slight swing ⇒ ⚠. The bonnet locks automatically.

You can open the small boot lid by pressing the button (2) on the remote control ⇒ page 44 for approx. 2 seconds.

A handle which makes the closing easier is located on the inner paneling of the boot lid.

WARNING

- **Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the boot lid. Otherwise, the boot lid might open suddenly when driving even if the boot lid lock is closed – risk of accident!**
- **Never drive with the boot lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!**

Note

- **After closing the boot lid, it is automatically locked within 2 seconds and the anti-theft alarm system* is activated.** This applies only if the vehicle was locked before closing the boot lid.
- The function of the hand grip on the bottom edge of the boot lid is deactivated after starting off or as of a speed of more than 5 km/hour. The function of the hand grip is acitvated again after stopping the vehicle and after opening the driver or front passenger door or after pressing the button (1) on the remote control ⇒ page 44. ■

Twindoor – large boot lid

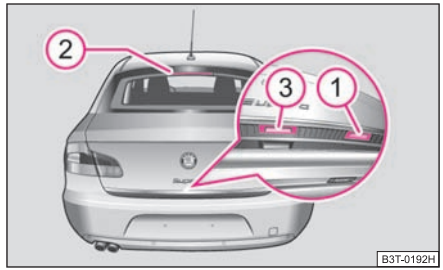

Fig. 31 Handle of boot lid

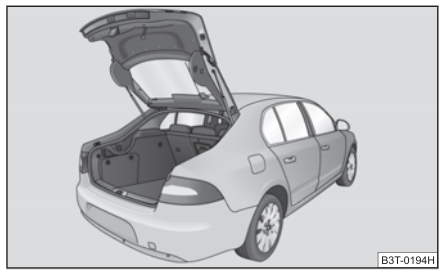

Fig. 32 Boot lid

After unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the key ⇒ page 40, “Emergency unlocking and locking of the driver's door” you can open the large boot lid ⇒ fig. 32.

Open large boot lid

- Press the handle (1) ⇒ fig. 31 on the bottom edge of the boot lid.
- You must wait until the brake light (2) in the rear window flashes twice.
- Press on the handle (3) and at the same time raise the boot lid. ▶

Close large boot lid

– Pull the boot lid down and close it with a slight swing ⇒ ⚠. The bonnet locks automatically.

A handle which makes the closing easier is located on the inner paneling of the boot lid.

⚠ WARNING

- **Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the boot lid. Otherwise, the boot lid might open suddenly when driving even if the boot lid lock is closed – risk of accident!**
- **Never drive with the boot lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!**

Note

- **After closing the boot lid, it is automatically locked within 2 seconds and the anti-theft alarm system* is activated.** This applies only if the vehicle was locked before closing the boot lid.
- The function of the hand grip on the bottom edge of the boot lid is deactivated after starting off or as of a speed of more than 5 km/hour. The function of the hand grip is acitvated again after stopping the vehicle and after opening the driver or front passenger door or after pressing the button (1) on the remote control ⇒ page 44. ■

Emergency unlocking of the boot lid

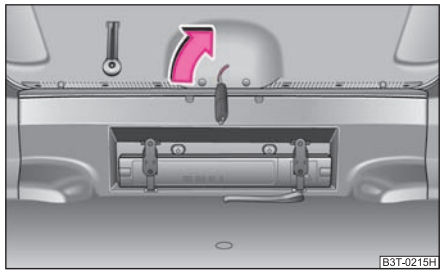

Fig. 33 Emergency unlocking of the boot lid

If there is a fault in the central locking, you can open the boot lid as follows:

– Fold the rear seats forwards ⇒ page 76.

– Guide the key into the slot in the trip panel as far as the stop ⇒ fig. 33.

– You can unlock the boot lid by the movement in the direction of arrow.

– Open the boot lid/luggage compartment door from outside. ■

Remote control

Description

You can use the remote control:

- to unlock and lock the car,
- unlock or open the boot lid,
- opening and closing window.

The transmitter with the battery is housed in the handle of the key. The receiver is located in the interior of the car. The operating range of the remote control is approx. 30 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.

The key has a fold-open key bit which can be used for unlocking and locking the car manually and also for starting the engine.

If a lost key is replaced or if the receiver unit has been repaired or a new unit installed, it is then necessary for a Škoda Dealer to initialise the system. Only after this is it possible to again use the remote control.

Note

- The remote control is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched on.
- The operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range (e.g. mobile phone, TV transmitter).
- The battery must be replaced, ideally by a Škoda Service Partner, if the central locking or anti-theft alarm system does react to the remote control at less than 3 metres away.
- If the vehicle door is opened, the vehicle cannot be locked using the remote control. ■

Unlocking and locking car

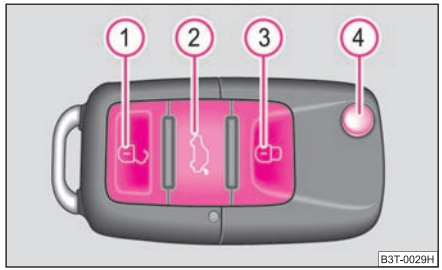

Fig. 34 Radio-operated key

Unlocking the vehicle

– Press button (1) for about 1 second.

Locking the vehicle

– Press button (3) for about 1 second.

Deactivating safe securing system

– Press button (2) twice in 3 seconds. Further information ⇒ page 39.

Small boot lid release

– Press button (2) for about 1 second ⇒ fig. 34. Further information ⇒ page 41.

Automatic raising of the small boot lid

– Press button (2) for about 2 second ⇒ fig. 34. Further information ⇒ page 41.

Folding out of the key

– Press button (4).

Folding up of the key

– Press button (4) and collapse the key bit in the housing.

The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked. The vehicle will lock again automatically if you unlock the vehicle using button (1) but do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 30 seconds. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

In addition, when the car is unlocked, the power seats and exterior mirrors* move into the position assigned to this key. The stored setting of driver seat and exterior mirrors is retrieved.

The interior lights and the lighting of the entry area are automatically switched on or off (if they have been set to operate via door contact) when unlocking and locking the vehicle.

Display of the locking

The turn signal lights flash once to confirm that the vehicle has been correctly locked.

If the doors or the boot lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

WARNING

If the vehicle is locked from the outside and the safe securing system is activated, there must not be any person in the vehicle as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – hazard!

Note

- Operate the radio remote control only when the doors and boot lid are closed and you have visual contact with the vehicle.
- Once in the car, you must not press the lock button of the radio remote control before inserting the key into the ignition lock in order to avoid the car being inadvertently locked and, in addition, the anti-theft alarm system* being switched on. Should this happen, press the unlock button of the radio remote control. ■

Synchonisation of the remote control

If the vehicle cannot be unlocked by actuating the remote control system then it is possible that the code in the key and the control unit in the vehicle are no longer synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the radio-operated key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery on the remote control was replaced.

This means it is necessary to synchronise the code as follows:

- Press any button on the remote control.
- after pressing the button, the door must be unlocked using the key within 1 minute ⇒ page 40, “Emergency unlocking and locking of the driver's door”. ■

Anti-theft alarm system*

Description

The anti-theft alarm system increases the level of protection against people seeking to break into the vehicle. The system triggers audible and visual warning signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle.

How is the alarm system activated?

The anti-theft alarm system is activated automatically when the vehicle is locked with the key in the driver's door or by using the radio remote control ⇒ page 40, “Emergency unlocking and locking of the driver's door”. The door contact monitoring is activated approx. 15 seconds after the locking. The interior and the towing protection monitoring are activated approx. 30 seconds after the locking. If a door is opened during activation, the monitoring is only activated 5 seconds after closing.

How is the alarm system deactivated?

The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated by pressing the unlock button on the remote control. The vehicle is automatically locked again if the vehicle is not opened within 30 seconds after reactivating the anti-theft alarm system.

The anti-theft alarm system is also deactivated if you unlock the vehicle door using the key within 45 seconds after locking the vehicle.

Once you unlock the vehicle by inserting the key into the driver door within 45 seconds, you then have to insert the key into the ignition lock and switch the ignition on within 15 seconds after opening the door in order to deactivate the anti-theft alarm system. The **alarm will be triggered** if you do **not switch on** the ignition within 15 seconds.

When is the alarm triggered?

The following security areas of the locked vehicle are monitored:

- Bonnet,
- Boot lid,
- Doors,
- Ignition lock,
- Socket of the factory-fitted towing device
- Angle of the vehicle*,
- Vehicle interior*,
- A drop in voltage of the on-board power supply.

An alarm is immediately triggered if either of the two battery terminals is disconnected while the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

How is the alarm switched off?

You switch the alarm off if you unlock the car with the radio remote control in the key or if you switch the ignition on.

Note

- The working life of the alarm siren is 6 years. More detailed information is available by a specialist garage.
- Before leaving the car, check that all the doors, windows and the electric sliding/tilting roof* are properly closed in order to ensure that the anti-theft alarm system is fully operational.
- Coding of the radio remote control and the receptor part precludes the use of the radio remote control from other vehicles. ■

Interior monitor and towing protection monitoring*

The interior monitor detects movements inside the car and then triggers the alarm.

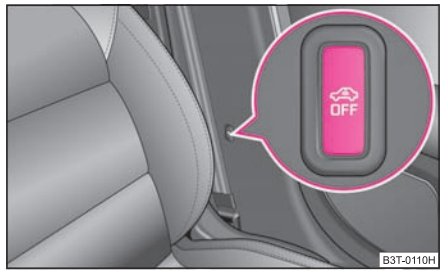

Fig. 35 Button for interior monitor and towing protection monitoring

Switch off the interior monitor and towing protection monitoring

– Switch off the ignition.

– Open the driver door.

– Press the button at the centre column on the driver side ⇒ fig. 35, the symbol which lights up in the button changes from red to orange.

– Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

The interior monitor and the towing protection monitoring are switched on again automatically the next time the car is locked.

Note

- You can switch the interior monitor and the towing protection monitoring off if there is a possibility that movements from (e.g. children or animals) inside the vehicle interior or if the vehicle must be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed, might trigger the alarm. ▶

- The opened storage compartment for spectacles reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. In order to ensure the function to be fully operational, close the storage compartment for spectacles before locking the vehicle. ■

Power windows

Buttons on the driver's door

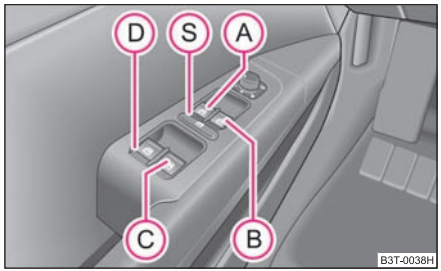

Fig. 36 Buttons on the driver's door

The power windows operate only when ignition is switched on.

Opening a window

– A window is opened by pressing lightly on the respective button in the door. The process stops when one releases the button.

– Additionally you can open the window automatically (fully opened) by pressing the button up to the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing a window

– A window is closed through pulling lightly on the respective button in the door. The closing process stops when one releases the button.

– Additionally you can close the window automatically (fully closed) by pulling the button up to the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

The switches for the individual windows are located in the armrest of the driver's door ⇒ fig. 36, front passenger door and in the rear doors ⇒ page 48, fig. 37

Buttons for the power window in the armrest of the driver's door

Ⓐ Button for the power window in the driver's door

Ⓑ Button for the power window in the front passenger's door

Ⓒ Button for the power window at the rear right door

Ⓓ Button for the power window at the rear left door

Ⓢ Safety switch

Safety pushbutton

You can deactivate the switches for power windows at rear doors by pressing the safety pushbutton Ⓢ ⇒ fig. 36. The buttons for power windows at rear doors are activated again by pressing the safety pushbutton Ⓢ again.

If the buttons for the rear doors are deactivated, the indicator light in the safety switch Ⓢ lights up.

WARNING

- **If you lock the vehicle from the outside, do not leave any person in the vehicle since it is no longer possible to open the windows from the inside in an emergency.**
- **The system is fitted with a force limiter ⇒ page 48. The closing process will be stop if an obstruction is detected and the window will open again. You should then take particular care when closing the windows! You may otherwise suffer severe injuries as a result of getting an arm, for example, jammed in the window!**
- **It is recommended to deactivate the electrically operated power windows in the rear doors (safety pushbutton) Ⓢ ⇒ fig. 36 when children are being transported on the rear seats.**

Note

- After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the windows for a further 10 minutes. The automatic window closing will not operate during this time. The power windows are switched off completely once you open the driver or front passenger door.
- When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds. ■

Button in front passenger door and in rear doors

Fig. 37 Fitting position of the switch at the rear door

A button for the relevant window is provided in these doors.

Opening a window

– Lightly press the appropriate switch **down** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

– Additionally you can open the window automatically (fully opened) by pressing the switch **down** up to the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing a window

– Lightly press the appropriate switch **up** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

– Additionally you can close the window automatically (fully closed) by pressing the switch **up** up to the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

WARNING

The system is fitted with a force limiter ⇒ page 48. The closing process will be stop if an obstruction is detected and the window will open again. You should then take particular care when closing the windows! You may otherwise suffer severe injuries as a result of getting an arm, for example, jammed in the window!

Note

After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the windows for a further 10 minutes. The automatic closing and opening functions will not operate during this time. The power windows are switched off completely once you open the driver or front passenger door. ■

Force limiter of the power windows

The electrically operated power windows are fitted with a force limiter. It reduces the risk of bruises or injuries when closing the windows.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimeters.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimeters.

You must try to close the window once again within 10 seconds after the window has gone down twice, even if the obstacle was not yet removed, the closing process ▶

is stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only switched off, if you attempt to close the window within the next 10 seconds - **the window closes now with full strength!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

WARNING

You should take particular care when closing the windows! You may otherwise suffer severe injuries as a result of getting an arm, for example, jammed in the window!

Window convenience operation

You can open and close the electrically powered windows as follows when unlocking and locking the vehicle (just closing of the sliding roof).

Opening a window

- by holding the pressed unlock button on the remote control,
- by holding the pressed top part of the button for the central locking system in the driver door,
- by holding the key in the driver's lock in the unlock position ⇒ page 40, “Emergency unlocking and locking of the driver's door”.

Closing a window

- by holding the pressed lock button on the remote control,
- by holding the pressed bottom part of the button for the central locking system in the driver door,
- by holding the key in the driver's lock in the lock position ⇒ page 40.

You can interrupt the opening or closing operation of the windows immediately by releasing the key or the closing button.

WARNING

The system is fitted with a force limiter ⇒ page 48. The closing process will be stop if an obstruction is detected and the window will open again. You should then take particular care when closing the windows! You may otherwise suffer severe injuries as a result of getting an arm, for example, jammed in the window!

Note

- The convenience opening of the windows with the aid of the key in the driver's lock is only possible 45 seconds after deactivating or activating the alarm system.

Operational faults

Electrically operated power windows do not operate

If the battery has been disconnected and then reconnected while the window was opened, the electrically operated power windows do not operate. The system must be activated. Proceed as follows in order to re-establish the function:

- you can close the window by pulling the switch on the top edge.
- release the switch
- you must pull the switch again for approx. 3 seconds

Operation in winter

Ice accumulating on the surface of the windows during the winter may result in a greater resistance when closing the windows and the window may stop and move back several centimetres

Proceed as follows to close the window fully:

- Turn the key in the lock of the driver door into the closing position and hold it there until all of the windows are closed.
- If the window closing is interrupted, it is necessary to put the force limiter out of operation ⇒ page 48.

WARNING

The system is fitted with a force limiter ⇒ page 48. The closing process will be stop if an obstruction is detected and the window will open again. You should then take particular care when closing the windows! You may otherwise suffer severe injuries as a result of getting an arm, for example, jammed in the window! ■

Electric sliding/tilting roof*

Description

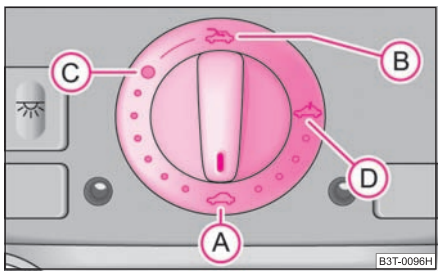

Fig. 38 Control dial for the power sliding/tilting roof

The sliding/tilting roof is operated by means of the control dial ⇒ fig. 38 and only functions when the ignition is switched on. The control dial has a number of fixed positions.

After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the sliding/tilting roof for a further 10 minutes. It is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof after opening or closing one of the front doors, however.

Note

- If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof does not close fully. Here you have to set the control dial to the switch position (A) and press it forward for about 10 seconds.
- It is necessary after each emergency operation (using crank handle) to move the sliding/tilting roof into the basic position. Here you have to set the control dial to the switch position (A) and press it forward for about 10 seconds. ■

Opening and tilting

Comfort position

– Turn the switch to position (C) ⇒ fig. 38.

Opening roof fully

– Turn the switch to position (B) and hold it in this position (spring-tensioned position).

Tilting roof

– Turn the switch to position (D).

The wind noise in the comfort position is less than when the roof is fully opened.

The sun screen is also opened automatically when the roof slides open.

Caution

It may be necessary during winter to remove any ice and snow in the area of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it in order to prevent damaging the opening mechanism. ■

Closing

Sliding closed/closing the sliding/tilting roof

– Turn the switch to position (A) ⇒ page 50, fig. 38.

Safety closing

The sliding/tilting roof is equipped with an overload protection system. If an obstacle (e.g. ice) prevents closing, the sliding/tilting roof stops and opens completely. You can close the sliding/tilting roof completely without overload protection by pressing the switch to the (A) position ⇒ page 50, fig. 38 at the front for as long as it takes for the sliding/tilting roof to shut completely ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury! ■

Convenience operation

You can also close an open sliding/tilting roof from the outside.

– Keep pressed the lock button on the remote control or hold down the key in the driver's door in the lock position until the sliding/tilting roof is closed ⇒ ⚠.

The closing process stops when one releases the key or the closing button.

⚠ WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury! The overload protection system does not function with the convenience closing. ■

Emergency operation

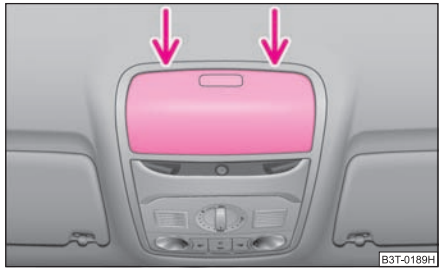

Fig. 39 Detail of the headliner: point for positioning screwdriver

Fig. 40 Detail of the headliner: Emergency operation

You can close and/or open the sliding/tilting roof by hand if the system is defect.

– Position the flat blade of a screwdriver carefully against the rear edge of the cover of the electrical drive ⇒ fig. 39.

– Pull the cover down.

– Take the crank out of the holder on the safety cover at the side of the dash panel. Insert the crank up to the stop into the opening ⇒ fig. 40 and close and/or open the sliding/tilting roof ⇒ fig. 40.

- Press on the cover again by first of all inserting the plastic lugs and then pushing the cover up.
- Insert the crank into the holder on the safety cover.
- Have the fault rectified by a specialist workshop.

On vehicles fitted with a storage compartment for spectacles, it must be opened before removing the cover for the emergency operation ⇒ page 90.

Note

It is necessary after each emergency operation (using crank handle) to move the sliding/tilting roof into the basic position. Here you have to press the control dial forward to switch position Ⓐ ⇒ page 50, fig. 38 for about 10 seconds. ■

Lights and Visibility

Lights

Switching lights on and off

Fig. 41 Dash panel: Light switch

Switching on side lights

– Turn the light switch into position.

Switching on the low beam and main beam

– Switch on the ignition.

– Turn the light switch into position.

– Press the main beam lever forward in order to switch on the main beam ⇒ page 60, fig. 47.

Switching off lights (except daylight driving lights)

– Turn the light switch into position.

When the parking lights are switched on, the symbol next to the light switch is illuminated.

Low beam comes on only if the ignition is switched on. After switching off the ignition, the low beam is switched off automatically and only the side lights come on.

On models fitted with **right-hand steering** the position of certain switches differs from that shown in ⇒ fig. 41. The symbols which mark the switch positions are identical, however.

WARNING

Never drive with side lights on – risk of accident! The side lights are not bright enough to light up the road sufficiently in front of you or to be seen by other oncoming traffic. In this case, always switch on the low beam when it is dark or if visibility is poor.

Note

- An audible warning will sound if you withdraw the ignition key and open the driver's door when the vehicle lights are still on.
- The acoustic warning signal is switched off over the door contact when the driver's door is closed (ignition off). The vehicle can be parked with the side lights on.
- If the car is parked for a lengthy period, we recommend switching off all lights, or leaving only the parking lights switched on.
- The switching on of the described lights should only be undertaken in accordance with the legal requirements.
- If a fault occurs in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically
- In the event of cool or humid weather conditions, the headlights can be misted up from inside.
  - The temperature difference between interior and external area of the headlight lenses is decisive.
  - When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet surfaces are free from mist after a short period. The headlight lenses can possibly mist up at the border areas.

– It also concerns reverse light and turn signal lights.
– This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system. ■

Daylight driving lights*

In some countries, the national legislation requires that the vehicles are equipped with the function daylight driving lights.

Switching on daylight driving lights

– Switch on the ignition without turning the light switch out of the position 0.

Deactivate function daylight driving lights

– Pull the turn signal light lever towards the steering wheel up to 3 seconds after switching on the ignition and at the same time, slide it to the bottom and hold it in this position for at least 3 seconds.

Activate function daylight driving lights

– Pull the turn signal light lever towards the steering wheel up to 3 seconds after switching on the ignition and at the same time, slide it to the top and hold it in this position for at least 3 seconds.

When the daylight driving lights are switched on, also the low beam with reduced brightness shines together with the side lights (approx. 92 % of the performance). This contributes to a longer life of the lamps for the low beam.

When the daylight driving lights are switched on, the illumination of the instrument cluster is switched off, however, it is switched on in the position **AUTO** when it is dark and the low beam shines with full brightness (100 % of the performance).

On vehicles fitted with an information display*, you can activate or deactivate in the menu the function daylight driving lights:

- SETUP (Settings)
- Lights & Vision (Lights & Vision) ■

Automatic light control*

Fig. 42 Dash panel: Light switch

Switching on automatic light control*

– Turn the light switch ⇒ fig. 42 into position **AUTO**.

Switching off automatic light control*

– Turn the light switch to the position 0, ≡D or ≡D.

If the light switch is in the position **AUTO**, the symbol illuminates when the ignition is switched on **AUTO** next to the light switch. If the low beam is activated with the light sensor, the symbol ≡D illuminates additionally next to the light switch.

If the light comes on automatically, the side lights and low beam as well as licence plate light light up at the same time.

If the automatic light control* is switched on, the light is regulated with the light sensor in the rear mirror holder. If the light intensity drops below the set value, e.g when driving during the day into a tunnel, the low beam and the side lights as well as the licence plate light come on automatically. If the light intensity increases again, the lights switch off automatically.

Motorway lights

If the automatic light control* has been switched on and the vehicle speed is over 140 km/h for at least 10 seconds, the side lights and low beam are switched on automatically. ▶

If the vehicle speed is below 65 km/h for at least 2 minutes, the lights are switched off.

Rain lights

If you move the windshield wiper lever in the position slow wipe for more than 5 seconds, the side lights and low beam are automatically switched on. The light is switched off when the windshield wiper lever is no longer than 4 minutes in the position for slow or intermittent wipe.

If you switch on the windscreen wipe in the operation rain sensor* for longer than 10 seconds or in the operation permanent wipe (position 2 or 3) ⇒ page 65 switching on for longer than 15 seconds, the side lights and low beam are switched on automatically. The light switches off if the windscreen wipe is in operation rain sensor* for more than 4 minutes or is not switched on in the operation permanent wipe.

WARNING

The automatic light control only operates as a support. The driver is not released from his responsibility to inspect the light and if necessary to switch on the light depending on the light conditions. The light sensor cannot detect for example rain or snow. For these conditions we recommend to switch on the low beam!

Note

- Do not affix any stickers in front of the light sensor, so that you do not impair its function or put it out of operation.
- The same principles as for using the automatic light control also apply to the light which is switched on manually ⇒ page 53. ■

Coming Home Function

The function makes it possible to switch on the lights in the darkness for a short time after leaving the vehicle.

Switching on Coming Home Function

– The light switch is in the position automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** and the low beam illuminates.

– Switch off the ignition.

– After opening the driver's door, the function Coming Home is switched on.

– Close all the doors and the boot lid and lock the vehicle. After a short time, switch all lights off.

Depending on equipment fitted the function Coming Home switches on the following lights:

- Parking lights,
- Low beam,
- Entry lighting in the exterior mirrors,
- Licence plate light.

Coming Home Function

The lights go out 10 seconds after closing all the doors and the boot lid.

If a door or the boot lid remains open, the lights go out 60 seconds after switching off the ignition.

On vehicles fitted with automatic driving lamp control you can also switch the light switch in the position **AUTO**. The function Coming Home is controlled with the light sensor in the mount of the interior rear mirror. If the light intensity is higher than the set value of the light sensor, the Coming Home Function is not switched on after switching off the ignition.

Note

- If the Coming Home Function is switched on constantly, the battery will be heavily discharged particularly in short-haul traffic.
- The switching on of the described lights should only be undertaken in accordance with the legal requirements.

- You can change the illumination period for the Coming Home Function by means of the information display*. ■

Leaving Home Function

This function makes it possible to switch on the lights when approaching the vehicle.

Switching on Leaving Home Function

– Unlock the vehicle with the radio remote control - the lights come on.

Depending on equipment fitted the function Leaving Home switches on the following lights:

- Parking lights,
- Low beam,
- Entry lighting in the exterior mirrors,
- Licence plate light.

Leaving Home Function

The function Leaving Home is controlled with the light sensor in the mount of the interior rear mirror. If the light intensity is higher than the set value of the light sensor, the Leaving Home Function is not switched on after unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control.

After unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control, the lights come on for 30 seconds. The Leaving Home Function is also switched off after the ignition is switched on and after locking the vehicle.

If no door is opened within 30 seconds, the lights go out and the vehicle is locked automatically.

Note

- If the Leaving Home Function is switched on constantly, the battery will be heavily discharged particularly in short-haul traffic.
- The switching on of the described lights should only be undertaken in accordance with the legal requirements.
- You can change the illumination period for the Leaving Home Function by means of the information display*. ■

Adaptive headlights (AHL)*

Switch on Adaptive headlights (AHL)*

– Turn the light switch ⇒ page 54, fig. 42 into position **AUTO**.

The outer illumination switches on if:

- the light sensor recognizes the low light intensity,
- no reverse gear is engaged,
- the operation “tourist light” is not switched on.

The light sensor switches on the full outer illumination at low light intensity,

System AHL* makes it possible to change the length and width of illumination of the headlight. The length and width of illumination changes automatically in relation to the vehicle speed and the use of the windscreen wiper.

System AHL* operates in the following modes.

Mode out of town

The mode “out of town” is a basic mode. The dispersion of the cone of light in front of the vehicle is similar to the low beam. The mode is active if none of the following modes are active.

Mode rain

In the mode “rain” the dispersion of the cone of light in front of the vehicle is wider and the width of illumination is shorter, so that during bad weather (rain) the dazzling of the oncoming drivers can be reduced. The mode is activated at speeds of 15 - 70 km/h and if the windscreen wipers continuously operate for a period of time longer than 2 minutes. The mode is deactivated when dropping below or exceeding the set speed limit or if the windscreen wipers have been switched off for a period of time longer than 8 minutes.

Mode city

In the mode “city”, the dispersion of the cone of light in front of the vehicle is wider and the width of illumination is shorter. It has as an aim to illuminate the adjacent footpaths, crossings, pedestrian crossings etc. The mode is active at speeds of 15 - 50 km/h.

Mode motorway

In the mode “motorway” the dispersion of the cone of light is so widespread, that it illuminates also the left (and right) [6] lane of the motorway, so that the driver can react in time to an obstacle or any other danger. The mode is activated stepwise as of a speed of 90 km/h. It gains its greatest effectiveness at speeds above 120 km/h.

Tourist light

When driving in countries with opposing traffic system, driving on the left/right, it is possible to switch on the mode “tourist light” electronically. This mode makes it possible to drive in the particular country without dazzling the oncoming vehicles. When the mode “tourist light” is active, the above mentioned modes and the side to side swivel of the headlight is deactivated.

The mode “tourist light” is activated in the information display* in the menu ⇒ page 19:

- **SETUP (Settings)**
- **Automatic light (Automat. Lights)**

Note

- The functions of the side to side swivel of the headlight* (activation at a speed of 10 km/h), fog lights with the function “corner” ⇒ page 57 and the function dynamic headlight beam range* add to the System AHL*.
- The System AHL* is solely delivered with Bi-Xenon gas discharge bulbs for low beam and main beam lights. ■

[6] It is valid for vehicles which are designed for driving on the left.

Fog lights

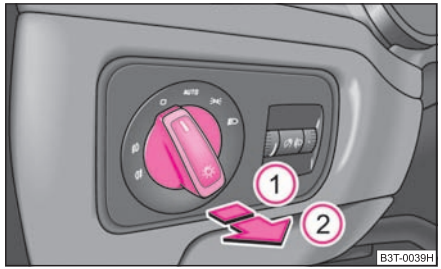

Fig. 43 Dash panel: Light switch

Switching on the fog lights

– First of all turn the light switch into position or ⇒ fig. 43.

– Pull the light switch into position (1).

The rear fog light warning light ⇒ page 26 lights up in the instrument cluster when the fog light is switched off. ■

Fog lights with the function “Corner”*

The fog lights with the function “Corner” are designed for a better illumination of all areas near the vehicle when corning, parking etc.

The fog lights with the function “Corner” are regulated according to the steering angle or after switching on the turn signal light [7] in the following circumstances:

- the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running or it moves with a speed of maximum 40 km/h;
- the daylight driving lights are not switched on;

[7] If both switch on versions are conflicting, for example if the steering wheel is turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on, the turn signal light has the higher priority.

- the low beam is switched on or the light switch is in the position **AUTO** and the intensity of the ambient light causes the low beam to be switched on;
- the fog lights are not switched on;
- no reverse gear is engaged.

Note

If you engage the reverse gear during the active function “Corner”, both fog lights illuminate. ■

Rear fog light

Switching on the rear fog light

– First of all turn the light switch into position or ⇒ page 57, fig. 43.

– Pull the switch into position (2).

The rear fog light warning light ⇒ page 26 lights up in the instrument cluster when the fog light is switched off.

Only the rear fog light of the trailer lights up automatically when you are towing a trailer **using a factory-fitted towing device** which is fitted with the rear fog light.

The rear fog light is located in the rear light array on the driver's side.

Caution

The rear fog light should only be switched on if visibility is particularly poor (conform with any varying legal provisions) to avoid dazzling vehicles behind your vehicle. ■

Instrument lighting

You can adjust the brightness of the instrument lighting.

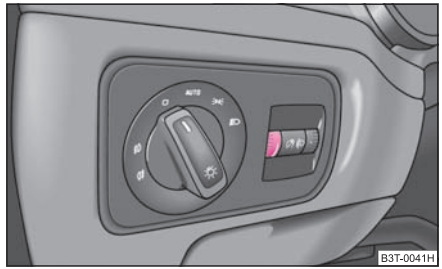

Fig. 44 Dash panel: Instrument lighting

Instrument lighting

– Switch on the light.

– Turn the control dial ⇒ fig. 44 to the desired intensity of the instrument lighting [8].

[8] For the information display* ⇒ page 19 the intensity of the lighting is automatically set. The setting using the control dial ⇒ fig. 44 is only possible when driving in the dark.

Headlamp range adjustment*

Once the low beam is switched on you can then adapt the range of the headlights to the load of the vehicle.

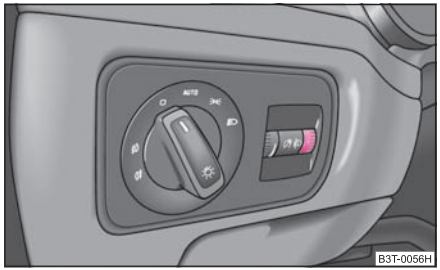

Fig. 45 Dash panel: Lights and Visibility

– Turn the control dial ⇒ fig. 45 until you have adjusted the low beam so that oncoming traffic is not dazzled.

Settings

The positions correspond approximately to the following vehicle loads:

- (-) Front seats occupied, luggage compartment empty.
- (1) All seats occupied, luggage compartment empty.
- (2) All seats occupied, luggage compartment laden.
- (3) Driver seat occupied, luggage compartment laden.

Caution

Set the headlight beam adjustment in such a way as to avoid dazzling oncoming traffic.

Note

The Bi-Xenon bulbs* adapt automatically to the load and driving state of the vehicle (e.g. speed, accelerating, braking) when the ignition is switched on and when driving. Vehicles which are not equipped with Bi-Xenon bulbs* do not have a manual headlight range adjustment control. ■

Switch for hazard warning lights

Fig. 46 Dash panel: Switch for hazard warning lights

– Press switch ⇒ fig. 46 to switch the hazard warning light system on or off.

All the turn signal lights on the vehicle flash at the same time when the hazard warning light system is switched on. The indicator light for the turn signals and the indicator light in the switch also flash at the same time. You can also switch on the hazard warning light system if the ignition is switched off.

The hazard warning light system is switched on automatically if an airbag is deployed in the event of an accident.

Please comply with any legal requirements when using the hazard warning light system.

Note

Switch on the hazard warning light system if, for example:

- you encounter traffic congestion,
- your vehicle breaks down or an emergency situation occurs. ■

The turn signal ⇦ ⇨ and main beam lever

The parking lights and headlight flasher are also switched on and off using the turn signal and main beam lever.

Fig. 47 Turn signal and main beam lever

The turn signal and main beam lever perform the following functions:

Right ⇨ and left ⇦ turn signal light

– Push the lever upwards or downwards ⇒ fig. 47.

– If you only wish to flash three times* (the so-called convenience turn signal), push the lever briefly up to the upper or lower pressure point and release it. This function can be activated/deactivated in the information display* ⇒ page 23.

– Turn signal for changing lanes - in order to only flash briefly, move the lever up or down to the pressure point and hold it in this position.

Main beam

– Switch on the low beam.

– Push the lever forwards.

– Pull the lever back into the initial position in order to switch the main beam off again.

Headlight flasher

– Pull on the lever of the steering wheel (sprung position) - the main beam and warning light in the instrument cluster come on.

Parking light

– Switch off the ignition.

– Push the lever up or down - the right-hand or left-hand parking light is switched on.

Information concerning the function of the lights.

- The **turn signal system** only operates when the ignition is switched on. The corresponding indicator light ⇦ or ⇨ in the instrument cluster also flashes.
- The turn signal is automatically cancelled after negotiating a curve.
- The indicator light flashes at twice its normal rate if a bulb of the turn signal light fails.
- The side light and rear light on the appropriate side of the vehicle are switched on when the **parking light** is selected. The parking light only operates if the ignition is switched off.

Caution

Use main beam or the headlight flasher only if this does not risk dazzling other road users.

Note

- If you have switched on the right or left turn signal light and you switch off the ignition, the parking light is not automatically switched on.
- Use only in accordance with the legal requirements the described lighting and signal systems. ■

Interior lighting

Front interior lighting and lighting of storage compartment on front passenger side

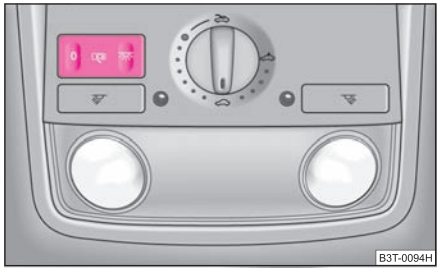

Fig. 48 Detail of the headliner: front interior lighting

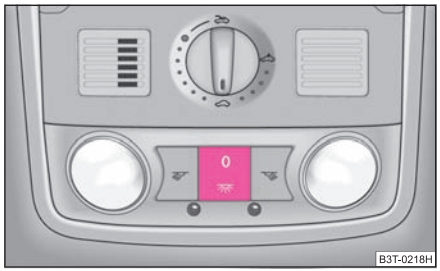

Fig. 49 Detail of the headliner: front interior lighting

Switching the interior light on

– Press the switch at the point of the symbol ⇒ fig. 48 or ⇒ fig. 49.

Switching the interior light off

– Press the switch at the point of the symbol **O**.

Door contact setting

– Position the switch into middle position.

Lighting of storage compartment on the front passenger side

– When opening the flap of the storage compartment on the front passenger side the lighting in the storage compartment comes on.

– The light switches on automatically when the parking light is switched on and goes out when the flap is closed.

The interior light comes on as soon as you unlock the car or open a door or when the ignition key has been removed. The light goes out again about 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed. The interior lighting is switched off when you lock the car or switch the ignition on. This only applies when the switch for the corresponding interior lights is standing n the door contact setting.

The interior lighting goes off after about 10 minutes when a door has been left open in order to avoid discharging the battery of the vehicle.

If the switch is in the position (permanent lights), the interior lighting goes off at the latest after 10 minutes in order to avoid discharging the battery of the vehicle.

Two LEDs are integrated in the interior lighting, which illuminates the shift lever and the middle of the dash panel. They are switched on automatically when switching on the parking light.

In addition, the lighting of the door handle is switched on after the ignition is switched on when the side lights are switched on.

Together with the front interior light, the rear interior light is simultaniously switched on or off.

Note

We recommend having these bulbs replaced by a specialist garage. ■

Front reading lights

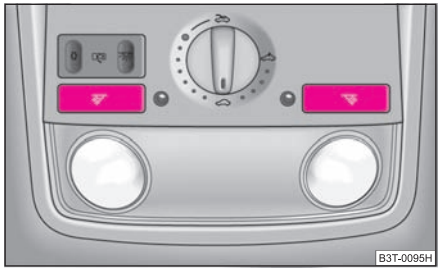

Fig. 50 Detail of the headliner: Front reading lights

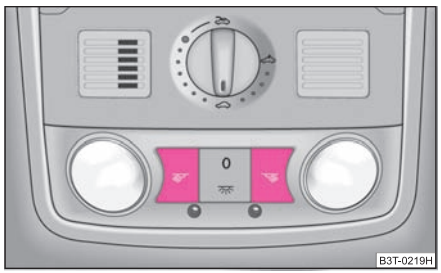

Fig. 51 Detail of the headliner: Front reading lights with integrated interior monitor

Front reading lights

– You switch on or off the reading light on the right or left by pressing the switch ⇒ fig. 50 or ⇒ fig. 51. ■

Interior lighting and rear reading lights

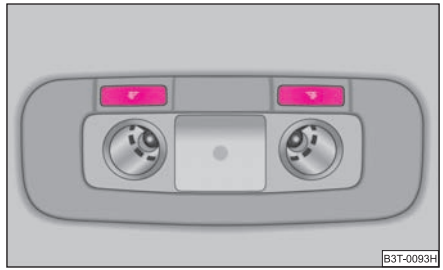

Fig. 52 Detail of the headliner: Interior lighting and rear reading lights

Interior lighting

– The rear interior lighting is operated together with the front interior lighting ⇒ page 61.

Reading lights

– You switch on or off the reading light on the right or left by pressing the switch ⇒ fig. 52. ■

Door warning light

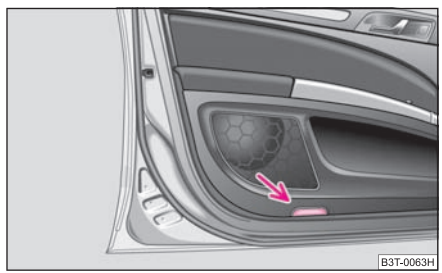

Fig. 53 Front door: Warning light

The warning light is located in the door trim panel below ⇒ page 62, fig. 53.

The warning light goes on every time the door is opened. The light goes out about 10 minutes after opening the door in order to avoid discharging the battery of the vehicle. ■

Luggage compartment light

The lighting comes on automatically when the boot lid is opened. The luggage compartment lighting will switch off again automatically if the boot lid remains open for more than about 30 minutes. ■

Entry lighting*

The lighting is positioned on the bottom edge of the exterior mirror.

The light beam is directed towards the entry area of the front door.

The light comes on after the doors have been locked or on opening the boot lid. The light goes out after switching on the ignition or up to 30 seconds after closing all the doors, the bonnet and the boot lid.

If a door, the bonnet or the boot lid remains open, the light goes out within 2 minutes if the ignition is switched off.

WARNING

If the entry light comes on, do not touch its cover – risk of burns! ■

Visibility

Rear window heater

Fig. 54 Switch for rear window heater

– You can switch the rear window heater on or off by pressing the switch ⇒ fig. 54 - the indicator light in the switch comes on or goes out.

The rear window heater only operates when the engine is running.

The rear window heater **switches off** automatically after 10 minutes.

For the sake of the environment

You should switch off the rear window heater as soon as the rear window is clear. The reduced current consumption will have a favourable effect on fuel economy ⇒ page 191, “Saving electricity”.

Note

- The position and the shape of the switch can differ depending on equipment installed in the vehicle.
- If the on-board voltage drops, the rear window heater is switched off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control. ■

Sun visors

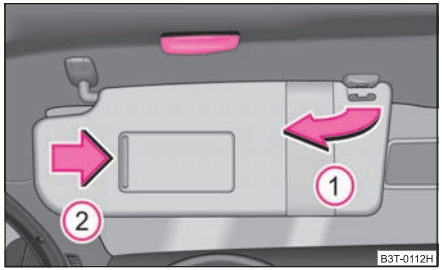

Fig. 55 Sun visor: swivelling out

You can pull the sun visor for the driver or front passenger out of the fixture and swivel it toward the door in the direction of the arrow (1) ⇒ fig. 55.

The vanity mirrors in the sun visors are provided with covers. When you slide open the cover in the direction of the arrow (2), the vanity mirror lighting in the headliner switches on automatically. It switches off again when you slide the cover closed or when you raise the sun visor.

WARNING

The sun visors must not be swivelled to the side windows into the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed. ■

Sun screen*

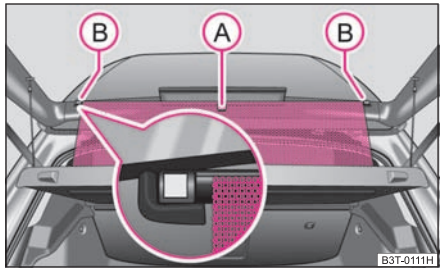

Fig. 56 Unroll the sun screen

The sun screen is located in the lower part of the luggage compartment cover.

Unrolling

– Pull the sun screen at the handle (A) and hang it in the bracket (B) ⇒ fig. 56.

Rolling up

– Take the sun screen out of the brackets (B) and hold it at the handle (A) so that it can roll up slowly and without damage into the housing on the luggage compartment cover.

Note

Do not place any objects which can react sensitively to influences of magnetic fields (watches, electronics etc.) in the immediate area of the brakets. They can be damaged by the magnetic field. ■

Sun screen in the rear doors*

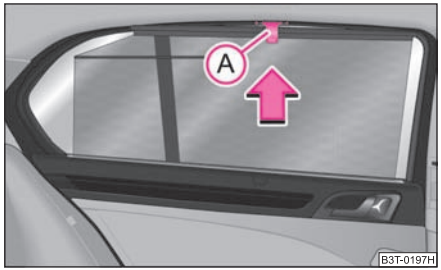

Fig. 57 Rear door: Sun screen

Unrolling

– Pull the sun screen at the handle (A) ⇒ fig. 57 and hang it in the bracket on the top edge of the door.

Rolling up

– Take the sun screen out at the handle (A) and hold it in such a way that it can roll up slowly and without damage. ■

Windshield wiper and wash system

Windshield wiper

You can operate the windscreen wipers and automatic wipe/wash using the windscreen wiper lever.

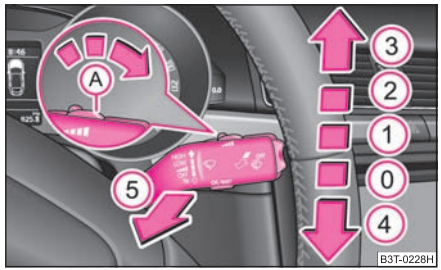

Fig. 58 Windscreen wiper lever

The windscreen wiper lever ⇒ fig. 58 has the following positions:

Finger-operated wiping

– If you wish to wipe the windscreen only **briefly**, push the lever into the sprung position (4). If you hold the lever in the lower position for more than 1 second, the wiper wipes faster.

Intermittent wiping

– Position the lever up into position (1).

– Set with the switch (A) the desired break between the individual wiper strokes

Slow wipe

– Position the lever up into position (2).

Fast wipe

– Position the lever up into position (3).

Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen

– Pull the lever towards the steering wheel into sprung position (5), the wash system sprays immediately, the windscreen wiper starts wiping a little later. The wash system and the windscreen wiper operate simultaneously at a speed of more than 120 km/h.

– Release the lever. The windscreen wash system stops and the wiper continues for another 3 - 4 wiper strokes (depending on the period of spraying of the windscreen). At a speed of more than 2 km/h, the wiper wipes once again* 5 seconds after the last wiper stroke in order to wipe the last drops from the windscreen. This function can be activated/deactivated by a specialist garage.

Rain sensor*

– Move the lever into position (1).

– You can set the sensitivity of the sensor individually with switch (A).

Switching windscreen wipers off

– Move the lever back into its home position (0).

After the windscreen wiper switches off each time or the ignition switches off for the third time, the position of the windscreen wiper changes, this counteracts an early fatigue of the wiper rubbers.

The windscreen wipers and the wash system only operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet is closed.

If the intermittent wipe is switched on, the intervals are also controlled depending on speed.

The rain sensor* automatically regulates the break between the individual wiper strokes depending on the intensity of the rain.

The windscreen washer nozzles are heated* when the ignition is switched on.

Top up with wash liquid ⇒ page 220.

Winter position

If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. For this reason we recommend adjusting the windscreen wipers in winter so that they can be folded out from the windscreen easily. You can set this rest position as follows:

- Switch on the windscreen wipers.
- Switch off the ignition. The windscreen wipers remain in the position in which they were when switching off the ignition.

You can also use the service position as a winter position.

WARNING

- **Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving ⇒ page 67.**
- **Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. Otherwise the window cleaner could freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.**
- **The rain sensor only operates as a support. The driver is not released from the responsibility to set the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.**

Caution

In frosty weather, please first of all check whether the windscreen wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen before switching them on. Switching on windscreen wipers when the blades are frozen to the windscreen may result in damage both to the blades and the motor of the windscreen wipers!

Note

- If the slower (2) or the faster (3) wiper setting is switched on ⇒ page 65, fig. 58 and the vehicle speed decreases to below 4 km/h, the lower wiper step is switched on automatically. At a speed increase of more than 8 km/h the previous wiper setting is established again.

- If there is an obstacle on the windscreen, the wiper will try to push away the obstacle. If the obstacle continues to block the wiper, the wiper stops after 5 cycles, in order to avoid a damage to the wiper. Remove the obstacle and and switch on the wiper again. ■

Headlight cleaning system*

The headlights are being cleaned after the windscreen has been sprayed for the first time and fifth time, the low beam or main beam are switched on and the windscreen wiper lever was held in the position (5) ⇒ page 65, fig. 58 for about 1 second.

The headlight washer nozzles are moved forward out of the bumper by the water pressure for cleaning the headlights.

You should remove stubborn dirt (such as insect residues) from the headlight lenses at regular intervals, for example when refuelling. Please refer to the following guidelines.

You should remove any snow from the fixtures of the washer nozzles and clear ice in winter with a de-icing spray in order to ensure proper operation of the cleaning system. ■

Replacing wiper blades for the windscreen wipers

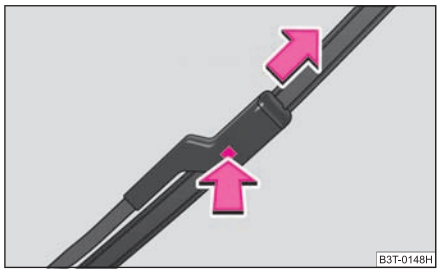

Fig. 59 Wiper blade for the windscreen wiper

One cannot fold out the wiper arms in the rest position from the windscreen. Before replacing the wiper arms you must put them into the service position.

Service position for changing wiper blades

– Close the bonnet.

– Switch the ignition on and then again off.

– Then press the windscreen wiper lever in the position (4) ⇒ page 65, fig. 58 within 10 seconds - the wiper arms move into the service position.

Taking off the wiper blade

– Fold windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.

– Press the locking button, in order to unlock the wiper blade and pull off in the direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 59.

Attaching a wiper blade

– Push the wiper blade until it locks up to the stop.

– Check whether the wiper blade is correctly attached.

– Fold the windscreen wiper arm back onto the windscreen.

The wiper arms return to the rest position after switching on the ignition and changing the position of the window wiper lever or when driving at a speed greater than 6 km/h.

Wiper blades in proper condition are essential to obtain good visibility. Wiper blades should not be allowed to become dirtied by dust, insect remains and preserving wax.

Juddering or smearing of the wiper blades could then be due to wax residues left on the windscreen by vehicle washing in automatic vehicle wash systems. It is therefore important to **degrease** the lips of the wiper blades after every pass through an **automatic vehicle wash system**.

WARNING

- **If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.**
- **You should clean the wiper blades regularly with a windscreen cleaner in order to avoid any smears. Clean a wiper blade with a sponge or cloth if it is very dirty, for example from insect residues.**
- **Replace the wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. The wiper blades are available from Škoda Service Partners.** ■

Rear-view mirror

Manual dimming interior rear-view mirror

Basic setting

– Pull the lever on the bottom edge of the mirror forward.

Dimming mirror

– Pull the lever on the bottom edge of the mirror back. ■

Automatic dimming interior mirror*

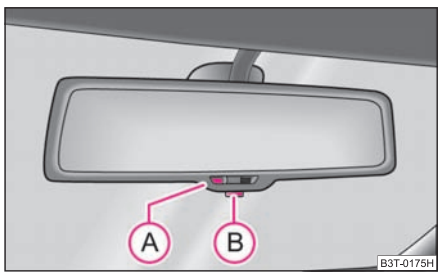

Fig. 60 Automatic dimming interior mirror

Switching on the automatic dimming

– Press the button (B) - the warning light lights up (A) ⇒ fig. 60.

Switching off the automatic dimming

– Press again the button (B) - the warning light goes out (A).

If the automatic dimming is switched on, the mirror dims **automatically** depending on the light striking the mirror from the rear. The mirror has no lever on the bottom edge of the mirror. When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror always moves back into the basic position.

Note

- Automatic mirror dimming operates only properly if the sun screen* for the rear window is not in use or the light striking the rear of the interior rear-view mirror is not affected by other objects.
- Do not affix any stickers in front of the light sensor, so that you do not impair the automatic dimming function or put it out of operation.
- If you switch off the automatic dimming interior rear-view mirror, also the exterior mirror dimming is switched off. ■

Exterior mirror with entry lighting*

The lighting is positioned on the bottom edge of the exterior mirror.

The light beam is aimed at the entry area of the front doors after the car is unlocked.

The light comes on after the doors have been locked or on opening the front door. The lighting goes out about 30 seconds after the doors are closed or if the ignition is switched on.

If the doors remain open, the lighting goes out automatically after about 10 minutes provided the ignition is not switched on. ■

Exterior mirror

You can adjust the exterior mirrors electrically.*

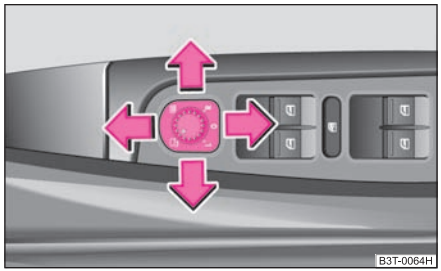

Fig. 61 Inner part of door: Rotary knob

The exterior mirror heater only operates when the engine is running and up to an outside temperature of +20 °C.

Heating of the external mirror

– Turn the rotary knob to position ⇒ fig. 61.

Adjusting left and right exterior mirrors simultaneously

– Turn the rotary knob to position **L**. The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

Adjusting the right-hand exterior mirror

– Turn the rotary knob to position **R**. The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

Switching off operating control

– Turn the rotary knob to position **0**.

Folding in both exterior mirrors*

– Turn the rotary knob to position .

Lowerable exterior mirror* with the aid of the key for remote control

– If all the windows are closed, press the unlock button (3) on the remote control ⇒ page 44, fig. 34 for approx. 2 seconds.

Tilting surface of front passenger exterior mirror*

When the rotary knob is in position **R** ⇒ fig. 61 and the reverse gear is engaged, the surface of the mirror tilts down slightly. This provides an aid in seeing the kerb of the pavement when parking the car.

The mirror returns back into its initial position, after the rotary knob is moved out of the position **R** and put into another position or if the speed is more than 15 km/h.

Memory for exterior mirrors*

On vehicles fitted with a memory for the driver seat, the relevant setting of the exterior mirror is also stored automatically when the seat position is stored.

WARNING

- **Convex (curved outward) or a spherical exterior mirrors increase the vision field. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are only of limited use, therefore, for estimating distances to the following vehicles.**
- **Use whenever possible the interior rear mirror, for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.**

Note

- Do not touch the surfaces of the exterior mirrors if the exterior mirror heater is switched on.
- You can set the exterior mirrors by hand, if the power setting function fails at any time, by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.
- Contact your specialist garage if a fault exists with the power setting of the exterior mirrors. ■

Automatic dimming exterior mirror*

The exterior mirrors are dimmed together with the interior mirror. If the automatic dimming is switched on, the mirror dims **automatically** depending on the light striking the mirror from the rear.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror always moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

Note

- Automatic mirror dimming operates only properly if the sun screen* for the rear window is not in use or the light striking the rear of the interior rear-view mirror is not affected by other objects.
- Do not affix any stickers in front of the light sensor, so that you do not impair the automatic dimming function or put it out of operation.
- If you switch off the automatic dimming interior rear-view mirror, also the exterior mirror dimming is switched off. ■

Seats and Stowage

Front seats

Basic information

The front seats have a wide range of different settings and can thus be matched to the physical characteristics of the driver and front passenger. Correct adjustment of the seats is particularly important for

- safely and quickly reaching the controls,
- a relaxed, fatigue-free body position,
- **achieving the maximum protection offered by the seat belts and the airbag system.**

⚠ WARNING

- **Never transport more occupants than the maximum seating in the vehicle.**
- **Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened ⇒ page 171, "Transporting children safely" with a suitable restraint system.**
- **The front seats and the head restraints must always be adjusted to match the body size of the seat occupant as well as the seat belts must always be correctly fastened in order to provide an optimal protection for you and your occupants.**
- **Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. This is particularly important for the front seat passenger. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!**
- **It is important for the driver and front passenger to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.**
- **Ensure that there are no objects in the footwell as any objects may get behind the pedals during a driving or braking manoeuvre. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, to brake or accelerate.** ■

⚠ WARNING (continued)

minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.

- **Ensure that there are no objects in the footwell as any objects may get behind the pedals during a driving or braking manoeuvre. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, to brake or accelerate.** ■

Adjusting the front seats

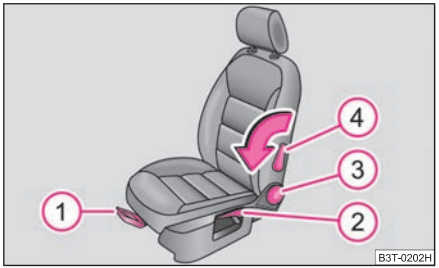

Fig. 62 Controls at seat

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

– Pull the lever (1) ⇒ fig. 62 up and push the seat into the desired position.

– Release the lever (1) and push the seat further until the lock is heard to engage.

Adjusting height of seat

– Lift the seat if required by pulling or pumping lever (2) upwards. ▶

– Lower the seat if required by pushing or pumping lever (2) downwards.

Adjust the angle of the seat backrest

– Relieve any pressure on the backrest (do not lean on it) and turn the handwheel (3) ⇒ page 71, fig. 62 to adjust the desired angle of the backrest.

Adjusting lumbar support

– Turn the lever (4) until you have set the most comfortable curvature of the seat upholstery in the area of your spine.

The driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the pedals can be pressed to the floor with slightly bent legs.

The backrest on the driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the upper point of the steering wheel can be easily reached with slightly bent arms.

⚠ WARNING

- **Only adjust the driver seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of injury!**
- **Take care when adjusting the seat! Adjusting the seat without care can lead to bruises or injuries.**
- **The backrests must not be angled too far back when driving otherwise this will affect proper operation of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!** ■

Adjusting front seats electrically*

Adjusting seats

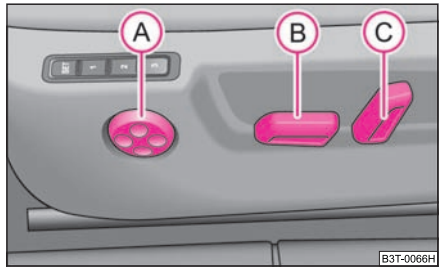

Fig. 63 Side view: Controls for adjusting the seat

Adjusting seat

– Adopt the correct seated position ⇒ page 71.

– Press switch (B) or (C) ⇒ fig. 63 in the direction of the desired setting.

Adjusting lumbar support

– Press the switch (A) front ⇒ fig. 63 in order to enlarge the curvature of the lumbar support.

– Press the switch (A) rear in order to reduce the curvature of the lumbar support.

– Press the switch (A) top in order to adjust the curvature of the lumbar support higher.

– Press the switch (A) bottom in order to adjust the curvature of the lumbar support lower.

Switch (B) is operated in order to move the seat up/down and forward/back, while switch (C) is operated in order to move the backrest forward or back. ▶

WARNING

- **Only adjust the driver seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of injury!**
- **Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.**
- **In view of the fact that the seats can also be adjusted when the ignition is switched off (even when ignition key withdrawn), you should never leave children unattended in the car.**
- **The backrests must not be angled too far back when driving otherwise this will affect proper operation of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!**

Note

If the movement of the seat is inadvertently interrupted during an adjustment, once again press the switch in the appropriate direction and continue with the adjustment of the seat to the end. ■

Storing setting

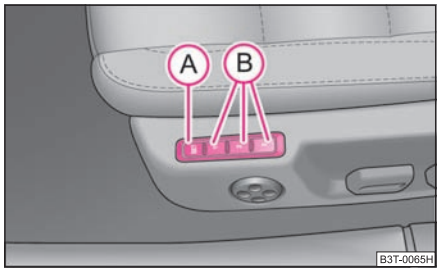

Fig. 64 Driver seat: Memory buttons and SET button

Storing seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward

– Switch on the ignition.

– Adjust the seat ⇒ page 72.

– Adjust both exterior mirrors ⇒ page 69.

– Press button **SET** (A) ⇒ fig. 64.

– Press one of the memory buttons (B) within 10 seconds after pressing the button **SET** - an acknowledgement signal confirms that the seat setting is stored.

Storing exterior mirror setting for reversing*

– Switch on the ignition.

– Turn the exterior mirror control to position **R** ⇒ page 69.

– Engage reverse gear.

– Move the right exterior mirror into the desired position ⇒ page 69.

– Take the vehicle out of gear. The set position of the exterior mirror is stored.

Memory buttons

Memory for the seat offers the possibility to store the individual driver seat and external mirror position. An individual position can be allocated to each of the three memory buttons (B) ⇒ fig. 64, that is three in total. After pressing the corresponding memory button (B), the seat and the exterior mirror are automatically moved into the positions which have been allocated to this button ⇒ page 74.

Emergency Off

You can interrupt the setting operation at any time, if you operate any button of the driver seat.

Note

- When storing settings with the memory buttons, we recommend that you begin with the front button and assign a memory button to each additional driver.
- Each new setting stored with the same button erases the previous setting.

- Each time you store the seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward you also have to re-store the individual setting of the exterior mirror on the passenger side for reversing. ■

Assigning remote control to the memory buttons

After storing the settings of the seat and exterior mirrors, you have 10 seconds in order to assign the remote control to the appropriate memory button.

– Withdraw the ignition key.

– Press the unlock button ⇒ page 44, after the successful assignment an audible confirmation will sound. The setting is stored with the memory button which you have selected.

If you wish to be able to retrieve the settings which are stored in the memory by also using the remote control, you have to assign the remote control to a memory button in each case.

If you wish, you can obtain an additional key with radio remote control from a Škoda dealer and then assign the radio remote control to another memory button.

Note

- If the remote control had previously been assigned to another memory button, this setting is then erased by the new assignment.
- If you assign the remote control to a memory button which has already been assigned to a remote control, the old assignment is also replaced by a new assignment in this case.
- The assignment of the remote control to a memory button is retained, however, after reassigning the seats and exterior mirrors. ■

Retrieving settings of the seat and mirrors

You can retrieve the stored settings either with the memory buttons or with the remote control.*

Retrieving settings with memory buttons

– In order to retrieve the stored setting, you have two possibilities:

– **One-touch automatic memory:** Briefly press the desired memory button (B) ⇒ page 73, fig. 64. The seat and exterior mirror are moved automatically into the stored positions (this applies only if the ignition is switched on and the speed is less than 5 km/h).

– **Memory keying**: Press and hold the desired memory button (B) pressed long enough until the seat and the exterior mirror are moved into the stored positions.

Retrieving settings with remote control

– If the driver door is closed and the ignition is switched off, briefly press the unlock button of the remote control ⇒ page 44 and then open the driver door.

– The seat and exterior mirrors now move automatically into the stored positions.

Retrieving setting of exterior mirror for reversing*

– Turn the rotary knob for the exterior mirror setting into the position **R** ⇒ page 69 before engaging the reverse gear.

The mirror returns back into its initial position, after the rotary knob is moved out of the position **R** and put into another position or if the speed is more than 15 km/h.

Emergency Off

You can interrupt the setting operation at any time, if you operate any button of the driver seat. ■

Head restraints

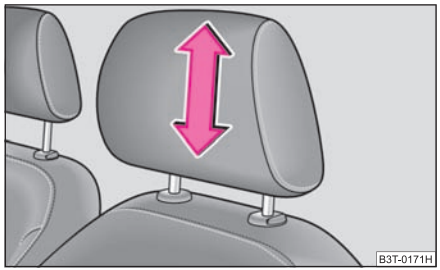

Fig. 65 Adjusting head restraint

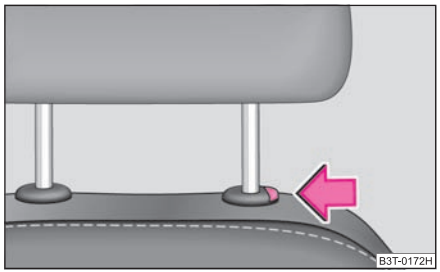

Fig. 66 Removing a head restraint

Best protection is achieved if the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head.

Adjusting the height of a head restraint

- Grasp the side of the head restraint with both hands and pull in upward direction as desired ⇒ fig. 65.
- Move the head restraint downwards if required by pressing and holding the locking button with one hand ⇒ fig. 66 and by pressing with the other hand the head restraint downwards.

Removing and installing a head restraint

- Pull the head restraint up out of the backrest of the seat as far as the stop (on the rear head restraints fold forward the seat backrest).
- Press the locking button in the direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 66 and pull the head restraint out.
- To re-insert the head restraint, push it down into the backrest of the seat far enough until you hear the locking button engage.

The position of the front and rear head restraints is adjustable in height. The middle rear head restraint is adjustable in two positions. ■

Middle rear head restraint*

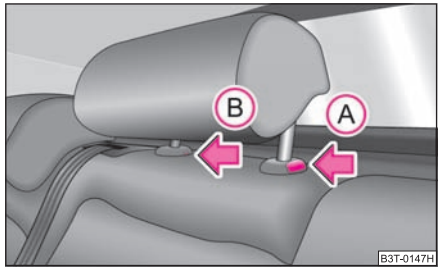

Fig. 67 Rear seats: middle head restraint

IIn certain countries national legal provisions also require the equipment of the rear seat with fixing eyes for child seat using the “Top Tether” system ⇒ page 178, “Attaching child seat using the “Top Tether” system”. For vehicles, which are equipped with such fixing eyes, a deviating sequence for removing the middle head restraint must be observed.

Removing and installing the rear middle head restraint

- Pull the head restraint out of the backrest of the seat as far as the stop. ▶

– Press the locking button in the direction of arrow (A) ⇒ page 75, fig. 67, press simultaneously the locking button into the opening (B) using a flat screwdriver with a width of maximum 5 mm and pull out the head restraint.

– To re-insert the head restraint, push it down into the backrest of the seat far enough until you hear the locking button engage.

WARNING

- **The head restraints must be correctly adjusted in order to offer effective protection for the occupants in the event of an accident.**
- **Do not drive under any circumstance with removed head restraints – risk of injury!**
- **If the rear seats are occupied, the rear head restraint must not be in the lower position.** ■

Rear seats

Folding the seat backrest forwards

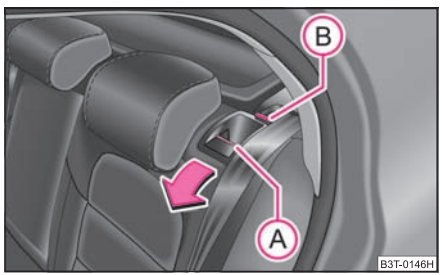

Fig. 68 Unlock the seat backrest

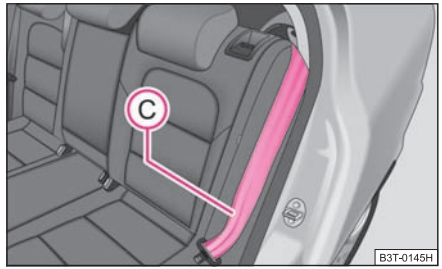

Fig. 69 Lock the seat backrest

The luggage compartment can be increased in size by folding forwards the rear backrests.

Folding the rear backrests forward

– Before folding the rear backrests forward, you must adapt the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded rear backrests.[9)]

– Unlock the rear backrests by pressing the unlocking handle (A) ⇒ fig. 68 and fold completely forwards.

Fold the rear backrests back into position

– Install the head restraint in the slightly lifted rear seat backrest.

– Place the rear lateral seat belt (C) behind the edge of the side trim panel ⇒ fig. 69.

– Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the securing knob clicks into place - check by pulling on the rear seat backrest.

9) If the front seats are too far back, we recommend that you have the rear head restraints removed before the seat backrests are folded forward. Store the removed head restraints in such a way that they cannot be damaged or soiled. Please refer to the guidelines ⇒ page 78.

– Make sure that the red pin (B) is covered ⇒ page 76, fig. 68.

WARNING

- **The belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the rear backrests – they must be ready to use.**
- **The rear backrests must be securely interlocked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment if there is sudden braking – risk of injury!**
- **Pay attention that the rear seat backresst are correctly interlocked. It is only then that the three-point seat belt for the middle seat can reliably fulfil its function.**
- **Before folding the seat backrest back into the secure position, place the rear lateral seat belt behind the edge of the side trim panel. Take suitable measures to prevent that the seat belt is jammed between the seat backrest and the side trim panel is thus damaged.** ■

Rear seat armrest

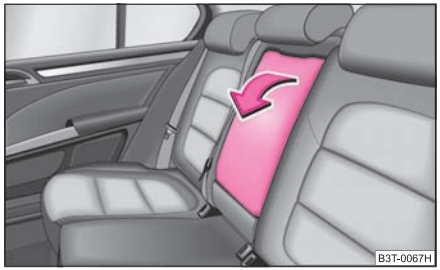

Fig. 70 Rear seats: Armrest

– You can fold down the armrest to enhance occupant comfort ⇒ fig. 70. ■

Seat heaters*

Fig. 71 Dash panel: Regulator for front seat heating

Fig. 72 Centre console at rear: Rotary controls for heaters of rear seats

You can heat the surfaces of the seats and of the backrests of the front seats and the two outer rear seats.

Front seats

– You can switch on and regulate the seat heating of the driver or front passenger seat by pressing the surface of the regulator at the point at which the symbol is located ⇒ fig. 71.

– With one press, you can switch the heating to highest intensity which is indicated by the lighting up of the three warning lights in the switch. ▶

– With repeated pressing of the switch, the intensity of the heating is down-regulated up to the switch-off. The intensity of the heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights in the switch.

Rear seats

– You can switch on and adjust the heating of the left and right seats by pressing the switch ⇒ page 77, fig. 72.

– With one press, you can switch the heating to highest intensity which is indicated by the lighting up of the three warning lights in the switch.

– With repeated pressing of the switch, the intensity of the heating is down-regulated up to the switch-off. The intensity of the heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights in the switch.

WARNING

If you have a subdued pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend not to use the seat heating. This can lead to burns on the back, the posterior and the legs which are difficult to heal. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that in specific cases as mentioned above the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

Caution

- You should not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply pressure at specific points in order to avoid damaging the heating elements of the seat heaters.
- If items are fitted or are stored on the seats e.g. a child seat or a pouch etc, do not use the seat heating. A fault in the heater elements of the seat heating can occur.
- Do not clean the seats moist ⇒ page 202.

Note

- The seat heating should only be switched on when the engine is running. This has a significant effect of saving on the battery capacity.
- If the on-board voltage drops, the seat heating is switched off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control. ■

Pedals

Concerning a secure depressing of the pedal, you should use only footmats from the Škoda genuine accessories.

Operation of the pedals must not be hindered!

WARNING

- **Greater pedal distances may be needed when there is a fault in the brake system.**
- **Do not place any footmats or other additional floor coverings in the area of the pedals in order to ensure that all the pedals can be fully depressed and are able to return unobstructed to their initial position – risk of accident!**
- **There must be no objects on the floor which could roll under the pedals. You would then no longer be able to apply the brakes, operate the clutch or accelerator – risk of accident!** ■

luggage compartment

Loading the luggage compartment

Please observe the following in the interest of having good handling characteristics of your vehicle:

– Distribute the items of luggage as evenly as possible.

– Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.

– Attach the items of luggage to the lashing eyes or the safety net* ⇒ page 79.

In the event of an accident, there is such a high kinetic energy which is produced by small and light objects that they can cause severe injuries. The magnitude of the kinetic energy depends on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the object. The speed at which the vehicle is travelling is in this case the more significant factor.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an unsecured object with a weight of 4.5 kg produces an energy, which corresponds to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg. You can imagine the injuries that can occur, if this "bullet" is flying through the interior compartment and hits an occupant.

WARNING

- **Store the objects in the luggage compartment and attach them to the lashing eyes.**
- **Loose objects in the passenger compartment can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other oncoming traffic. This risk is still increased, if the objects which are flying around are hit by a deployed airbag. In this case, the objects which are thrown back can injure the occupants – hazard.**
- **Please note that the handling properties of your vehicle may be affected when transporting heavy objects as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.**
- **The items carried in the luggage compartment should be stored in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward if there are any sudden driving or braking manoeuvres undertaken – risk of injury!**
- **Never drive with the boot lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!**
- **On no account exceed the permissible axle loads and the permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident!**
- **Never transport occupants in the luggage compartment!**

Caution

Please ensure that the heating elements of the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of objects sliding in this area.

Note

Tyre pressure must be adjusted to the load ⇒ page 222, fig. 195. ■

Lashing eyes

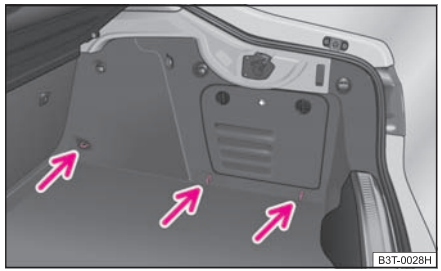

Fig. 73 Luggage compartment: Lashing eyes

Eyes are located on the sides of the loading area for lashing the goods to be loaded.

You can also attach a floor fixing net* to these eyes for lashing small objects.

WARNING

- **The load to be transported must be fixed in place in such a way that it cannot move during the journey and when braking.**
- **If the items of luggage or objects are attached to the lashing eyes with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents. In order to prevent the items of luggage being thrown forward, always use suitable lashing straps which are firmly attached to the lashing eyes.** ■

Fixing nets - Net programme*

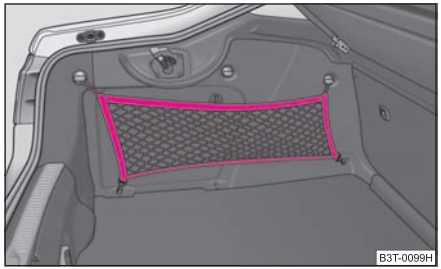

Fig. 74 Fixing net: Vertical pocket

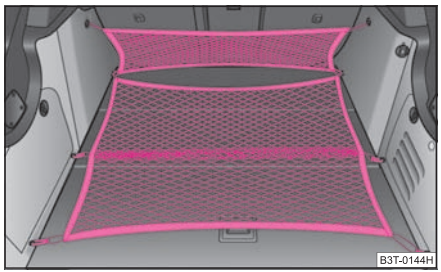

Fig. 75 Fixing net: Floor fixing net and horizontal pocket

Fixing examples of the fixing net as vertical pocket ⇒ fig. 74 and the fixing net as horizontal pocket ⇒ fig. 75.

The fixing nets* are stored in the right side storage compartment of the luggage compartment.

WARNING

The maximum permissable load of the side nets is 3.5 kg. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury and net damage!

Caution

Do not place any objects with sharp edges in the nets - risk of net damage. ■

Folding hooks

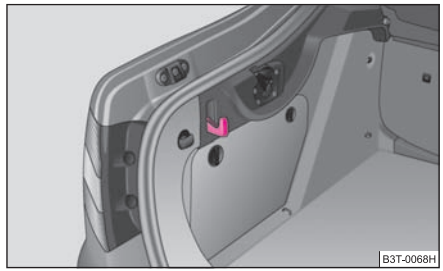

Fig. 76 Luggage compartment: folding hooks

Folding hooks for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc., are provided on both sides of the luggage compartment ⇒ fig. 76.

An item of luggage weighing up to 10 kg can be attached to the hook. ■

Fixing floor covering of the luggage compartment

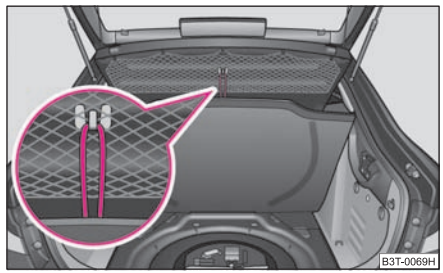

Fig. 77 Luggage compartment: Fixing of the floor covering

A loop is located on the floor covering of the luggage compartment ⇒ page 80, fig. 77. When handling the spare wheel, you can fix the raised floor covering on a hook at the luggage compartment cover. ■

Luggage net*

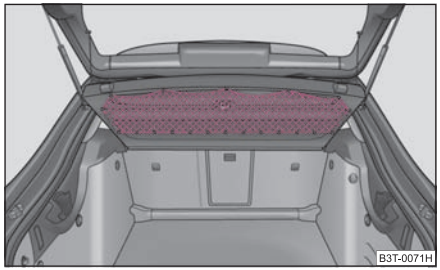

Fig. 78 Luggage compartment: Luggage net

The luggage net is designed for the tranportation of lighter objects.

⚠ WARNING

- **In the luggage net you must only store objects (up to a total weight of 1.5 kg). Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!**
- **No objects with sharp edges should be stored in the luggage net, because they can damage the luggage net.** ■

The luggage compartment cover

You can use the luggage compartment cover behind the head restraints for storing light and soft items.

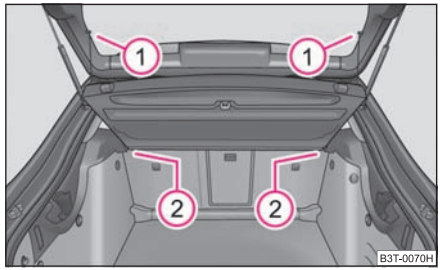

Fig. 79 Removing the luggage compartment cover

The luggage compartment cover can be removed as required if one must transport bulky goods.

- Unhook the support straps on the boot lid (1) ⇒ fig. 79.
- Place the cover on the side supports.
- Pull the cover out of the holder (2) horizontally to the rear.
- Install again by pushing the luggage compartment cover forwards into the holder (2) and hanging the support straps (1) on the boot lid.

You can stow the removed luggage compartment cover behind the rear seat backrest.

⚠ WARNING

No objects should be placed on the luggage compartment cover, the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.

Caution

Please ensure that the heating elements of the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of objects placed in this area.

Note

Opening the boot lid also lifts up the luggage compartment cover. ■

Remove raised floor*

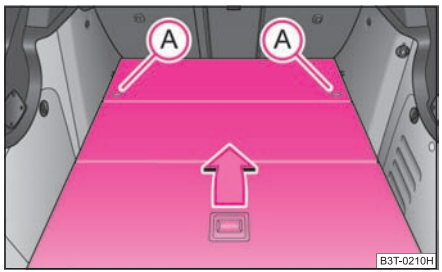

Fig. 80 Luggage compartment: remove raised floor

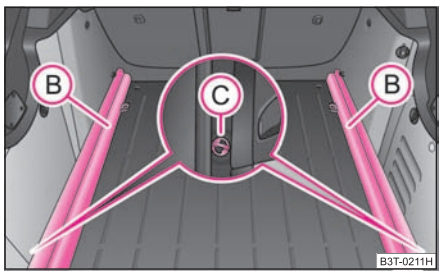

Fig. 81 Luggage compartment: Remove carrier rail

The raised floor makes handling of bulky items of luggage easier. You can remove the raised floor if necessary.

- Unlock the floor by turning the safety eyes (A) to the left by approx. 90° ⇒ fig. 80.
- Fold together the floor and take it out by moving in direction of arrow.
- Unlock the carrier rail (B) by turning the arbor-mounted fixing eyes (C) to the right by approx. 90° ⇒ fig. 81.

WARNING

Pay attention when installing the raised floor that the carrier rail and the raised floor are correctly fastened. If this is not the case, there is risk of injury for the occupants.

Note

The maximum load of the raised floor is 75 kg. ■

Separation of the luggage compartment with the aid of the raised floor*

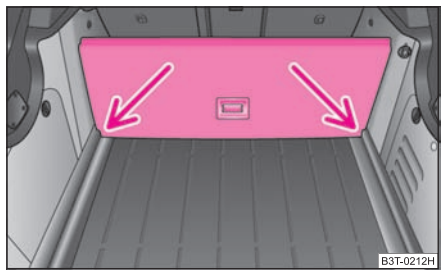

Fig. 82 Luggage compartment: Separation of the luggage compartment

The luggage compartment can be separated with the aid of the raised floor.

– Lift up a part of the floor with the holder and secure it by moving it into the grooves marked by arrows ⇒ page 82, fig. 82. ■

The roof rack*

Description

Pay attention to the following points if you wish to transport luggage or other items on the roof of your vehicle:

- A special roof luggage rack system was developed for the vehicle, that is why you should only use a roof luggage rack which has been released for use by Škoda Auto a.s.
- The base carrier is the basis for a complete roof luggage rack system. Separate additional holders are required for safety reasons for transporting luggage, bikes, surfboards, skis and boats.
- The basic version of the roof luggage rack system and further components are obtainable as accessories from Škoda Service Partners.

Caution

- If you use other roof rack systems or if the roof bars are not properly fitted, then any damage which may result to your car is not covered by the warranty agreements. It is therefore essential to pay attention to the fitting instructions supplied with the roof luggage rack system.
- On models fitted with a power sliding/tilting roof, ensure that the opened sliding/tilting roof does not strike any items of luggage transported on the roof.
- Ensure that the opened boot lid does not collide with the roof load.

For the sake of the environment

The increased aerodynamic drag results in a higher fuel consumption. One should therefore take off the roof bar system after use. ■

Attachment points

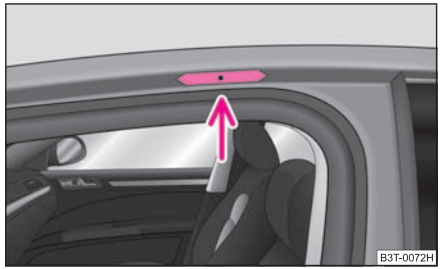

Fig. 83 Attachment points for base roof carrier

Fitting

– Insert the attachment points of the roof rack into the mounts of the body so that the pins of the attachment points grasp into the holes of the body.

Note

- Pay attention to the information regarding assembly and disassembly in the attached instructions.
- If you have any questions, please contact a specialist garage. ■

Roof load

Distribute weight evenly over the roof luggage rack system. The maximum permissible roof load (including roof rack system) of **100 kg** and the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle should not be exceeded.

You cannot make full use of the permissible roof load if you use a roof luggage rack system with a lower load carrying capacity. The load transported on the roof luggage rack system must not exceed the weight limit which is stated in the fitting instructions.

WARNING

- **The items which you transport on the roof bar system must be reliably attached – risk of accident!**
- **You must on no account exceed the permissible roof load, the permissible axle loads and the permissible gross weight of your vehicle – risk of accident!**
- **Please note that the handling properties of your vehicle change when you transport heavy or bulky items on the roof bar system as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity and the increased wind attack area – risk of accident! You must absolutely adapt your style of driving and the speed of the vehicle to the specific circumstances.** ■

Cup holder

Cup holder in front centre console

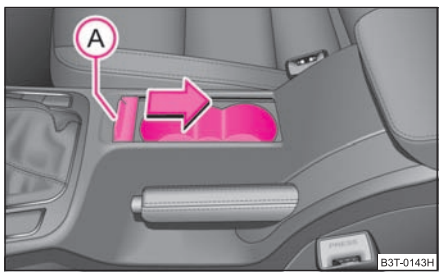

Fig. 84 Front centre console: Cup holder

You can place two cups or beverage cans into the recesses ⇒ fig. 84.

On vehicles which are fitted with a cover for cup holders*, you can cover the cup holder by pulling at the handle (A).

WARNING

- **Do not place any hot beverages into the cup holder while the car is moving. The hot beverages may spill – risk of scalding!**
- **Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). You might be injured by them in the event of an accident.**

Caution

Do not open the beverages in the cup holder while driving. They may spill when braking and while doing so damage the vehicle. ■

Cup holders in the armrest of the rear seats*

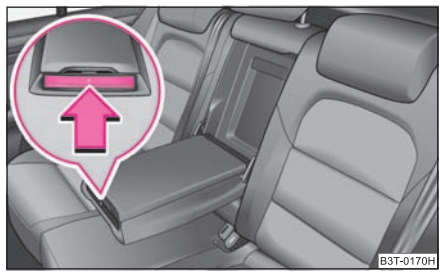

Fig. 85 Armrest of rear seats: Cup holder

Fig. 86 Armrest of rear seats: Insert cup holder

You can place two cups into the cup holder.

– If you press on the face end of the armrest in the direction of arrow ⇒ page 84, fig. 85, the cup holder comes out.

– In order to slide the cup holder in again, press the middle part of the cup holder ⇒ fig. 86 and slide it into the armrest.

WARNING

- **Do not place any hot beverages into the cup holder while the car is moving. The hot beverages may spill – risk of scalding!**
- **Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). You might be injured by them in the event of an accident.**

Caution

Do not open the beverages in the cup holder while driving. They may spill when braking and while doing so damage the vehicle. ■

Note holder

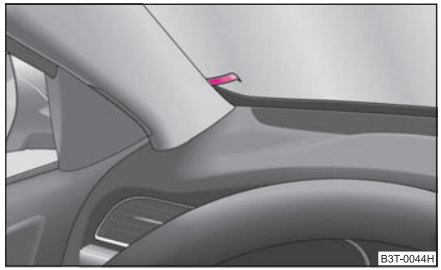

Fig. 87 Windscreen: Note holder

The note holder is designed e.g. for attaching a car park ticket in parking areas.

The attached note has to always be **removed** before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision. ■

Ashtray

Front ashtray*

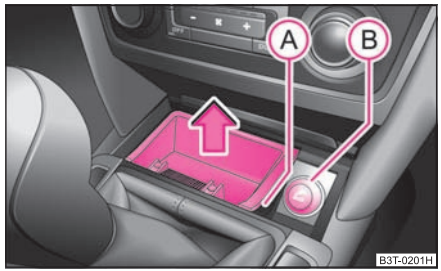

Fig. 88 Centre console: Front ashtray

Removing ashtray insert

– Open the ashtray ⇒ page 89, fig. 94.

– Grasp the ashtray insert at the point Ⓐ ⇒ page 85, fig. 88 and take it out in direction of arrow.

Insert ashtray insert

– Insert the ashtray vertically downwards.

WARNING

Never lay flammable objects in the ashtray basin – risk of fire! ■

Rear ashtray*

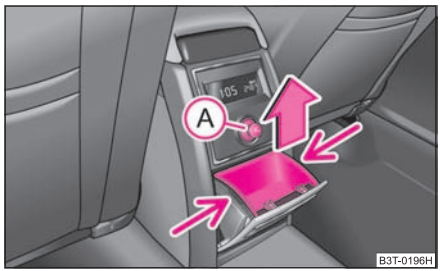

Fig. 89 Centre console: Rear ashtray

Removing ashtray insert

– Open the ashtray ⇒ page 91, fig. 101.

– Grasp the insert at the points marked with the arrows ⇒ fig. 89 and take it out.

Insert ashtray insert

– Insert the ashtray insert into the mount and press it in.

WARNING

Never lay flammable objects in the ashtray basin – risk of fire! ■

Cigarette lighter*, power sockets

Cigarette lighter

You can also use the socket on the cigarette lighter for other electrical appliances.

Using the cigarette lighter

– Press the button of the lighter Ⓐ ⇒ fig. 89 or Ⓑ ⇒ page 85, fig. 88.

– Wait until the button jumps forward.

– Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use it.

– Insert the cigarette lighter again into the socket.

Using the socket

– Remove the cover.

– Connect the plug of the electrical appliance to the socket.

The 12 volt power socket can also be used to supply power to electrical accessories with a power uptake up to 180 watts.

WARNING

- **Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Not paying proper attention or incorrect use the cigarette lighter in an uncontrolled manner may result in burns.**
- **The cigarette lighter and the power socket also operates when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key withdrawn. You should therefore never leave children unattended in the vehicle.**

Caution

Always use matching plugs to avoid damaging the power socket.

Note

- **Connecting electrical components when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle – risk of battery draining!**
- Further information ⇒ page 228. ■

Power socket in the luggage compartment

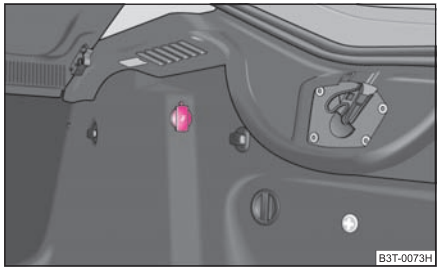

Fig. 90 Luggage compartment: Power socket

– Open the cover of the power socket ⇒ fig. 90.

– Connect the plug of the electrical appliance to the socket.

You can only use the power socket for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a power uptake up to 180 watts. The vehicle battery will be discharged in the process if the engine is stationary.

The same remarks apply here as for ⇒ page 86.

Further information ⇒ page 228. ■

Storage compartments

Overview

You will find the following storage facilities in your vehicle:

Storage compartment on the front passenger side	⇒ page 88
Storage compartment on the driver's side	⇒ page 89
Stowage compartment in front centre console*	⇒ page 89
Storage net on the front centre console*	⇒ page 89
Stowage compartment for spectacles*	⇒ page 90
Storage compartment in the front doors	⇒ page 90
Stowage compartment below front passenger seat*	⇒ page 90
Front seat armrest with stowage compartment	⇒ page 91
Rear armrest with stowage compartment*	⇒ page 91
Stowage compartment in rear centre console*	⇒ page 91
Stowage compartment for an umbrella	⇒ page 92
Seat backrest with opening for skis*	⇒ page 92
Through-loading bag*	⇒ page 93
Side compartments in the luggage compartment*	⇒ page 94
Clothes hooks*	⇒ page 95

WARNING

- **Please do not place anything on top of the dash panel. Such objects might slide or fall down when driving (when accelerating or cornering) and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic situation – risk of accident!**
- **Ensure that when driving no objects from the centre console of from other storage possibilities may get into the footwell of the driver. You would**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

then no longer be able to apply the brakes, operate the clutch or accelerator – risk of accident! ■

Storage compartment on the front passenger side

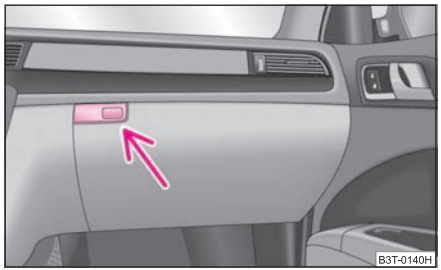

Fig. 91 Dash panel: Storage compartment on the front passenger side

Opening and closing the storage compartment on the front passenger side

– Press the button ⇒ fig. 91, the lid folds down.

– Raise the lid and press it until the catch is heard to engage.

In the storage compartment are pencil holders.

⚠ WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons. ■

Cooling of storage compartment on front passenger side

The compartment is fitted with an isolatable entry for cooled air.

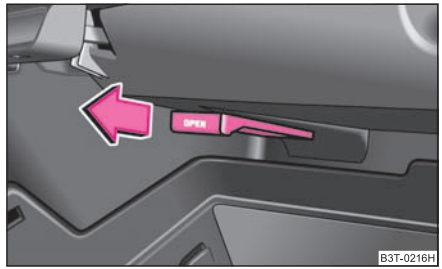

Fig. 92 Storage compartment: Using cooling system

– Switch on the cooling system by pulling the lever in direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 92.

– Switch off the cooling by pressing the lever.

Opening the air inlet when the air conditioning system is on causes fresh or interior air to flow into the storage compartment.

We recommend that you switch off the cooling if it is operating in the heating mode or if you are not using the cooling system for the storage compartment. ■

Storage compartment on the driver's side

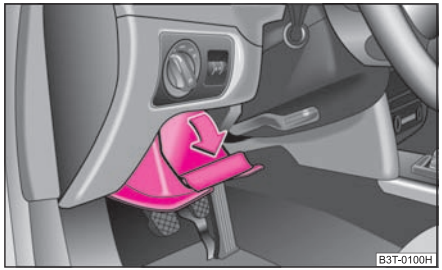

Fig. 93 Dash panel: Storage compartment on the driver's side

– The storage compartment is opened by lifting the handle and folding open in the direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 93.

WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons. ■

Stowage compartment in front centre console*

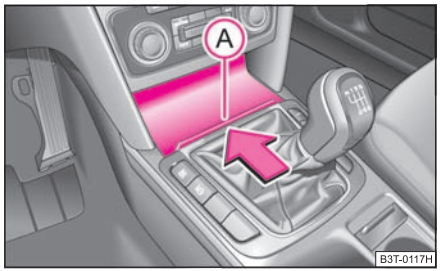

Fig. 94 Front centre console: Storage compartment

– Press on the lid at the point Ⓐ in direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 94, the lid slides in.

WARNING

The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire! ■

Storage net on the front centre console*

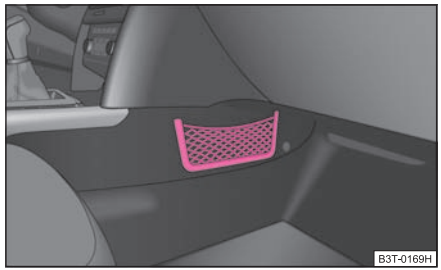

Fig. 95 Front centre console: Storage net

The storage net in the front center console ⇒ fig. 95 is designed for the transport of smaller objects.

WARNING

- **In the luggage net you must only store objects (up to a total weight of 0,5 kg). Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!**
- **No objects with sharp edges should be stored in the luggage net, because they can damage the luggage net. ■**

Stowage compartment for spectacles*

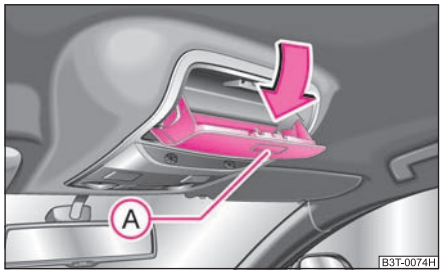

Fig. 96 Detail of the headliner: Stowage compartment for spectacles

– Press button (A), the storage compartment folds down ⇒ fig. 96.

WARNING

The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting objects and otherwise must be kept closed. ■

Storage compartment in the front doors

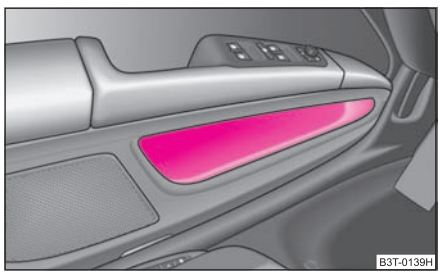

Fig. 97 Storage compartment in the front doors

WARNING

Use the storage compartments in the door panels ⇒ fig. 97 only for small items which do not project out of the compartment in order to avoid any interference with the proper operation of the side airbags. ■

Stowage compartment below front passenger seat*

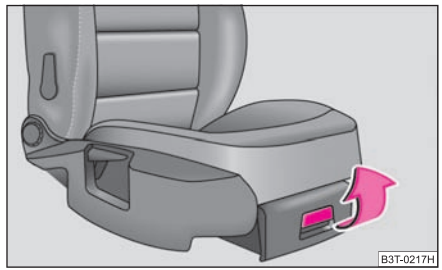

Fig. 98 Front passenger seat: Storage compartment

The storage compartment is foreseen for storing small objects of up to 1,5 kg. in weight.

– Tilt the lock to open the flap and pull out the flap ⇒ fig. 98.

– Tilt the lock to close the flap and press flap close. ■

Front seat armrest with storage compartment

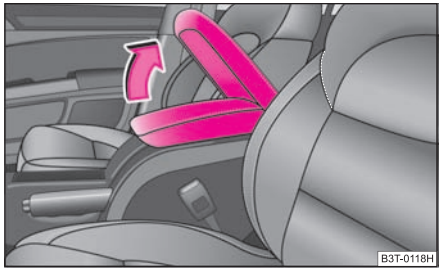

Fig. 99 Armrest: Storage compartment

The armrest is adjustable for height and length.

Opening stowage compartment

– Open the lid of the armrest in the direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 99.

Closing stowage compartment

– Open the lid up to the stop, then you can fold it downwards.

Setting height

– First of all fold the lid to the bottom and lift it in the direction of arrow into one of the 4 fixed positions.

Adjusting in forward/back direction

– Push the lid into the desired position.

Note

Push the lid of the armrest up to stop to the rear before operating the handbrake. ■

Rear seat armrest with storage compartment*

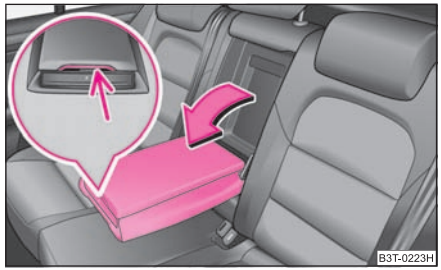

Fig. 100 Armrest at the rear door

You can fold down the armrest to enhance occupant comfort.

The armrest includes a stowage compartment. You open the compartment by pressing the button on the front side and raising the cover ⇒ fig. 100. ■

Stowage compartment in rear centre console*

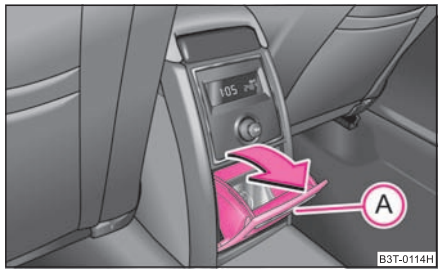

Fig. 101 Centre console at rear: Storage compartment

The storage compartment is equipped with a removeable insert.

– Open the storage compartment by pulling at the handle Ⓐ in direction of arrow ⇒ page 91, fig. 101.

⚠ WARNING

The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire! ■

Stowage compartment for umbrella*

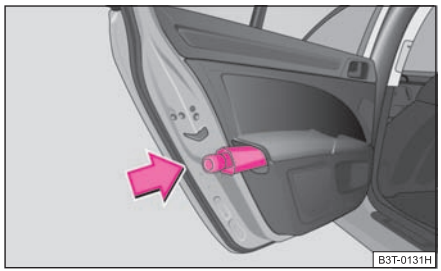

Fig. 102 Left rear door: Storage compartment

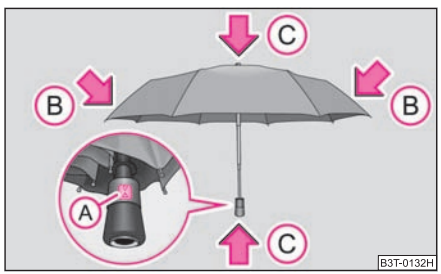

Fig. 103 Opening and closing umbrella

The umbrella supplied with the car is stowed in the compartment in the rear left door ⇒ fig. 102.

Opening umbrella

– Press button Ⓐ ⇒ fig. 103.

Closing umbrella

– Press the button Ⓐ. The umbrella closes partially in direction of arrow Ⓑ.

– Press the umbrella in direction of arrow Ⓒ in order to fold it closed completely. ■

Seat backrest with opening for skis

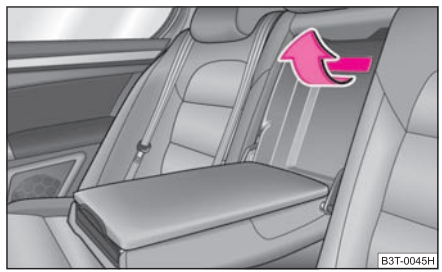

Fig. 104 Rear seats: Handle of lid

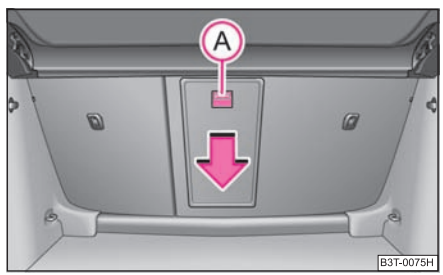

Fig. 105 Luggage compartment: Unlock button

After folding open the armrest and the lid, an opening in the seat backrest becomes visible through which you can push long objects e.g. skis etc. You can fold open the armrest and the lid from the passenger or luggage compartment.

Opening from passenger compartment

- Fold the rear armrest ⇒ page 77, fig. 70.
- Pull the handle up to the stop in upward direction and fold open the lid downwards ⇒ page 92, fig. 104.

Opening from luggage compartment

- Push the unlock button Ⓐ downwards ⇒ page 92, fig. 105 and fold the lid (with armrest) to the front.

Closing

- Fold the lid and the armrest up to the stop in upward direction - the lid must click into place audibly.

Ensure that the armrest is always locked into place after closing. You can recognize this on the fact that the red field above the unlocking button Ⓐ of the luggage compartment is not visible. ■

Through-loading bag (Unibag)*

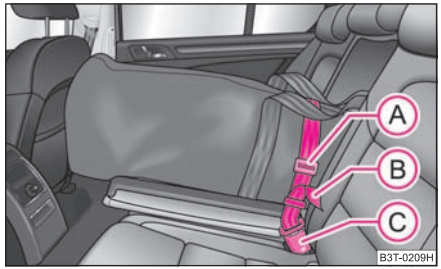

Fig. 106 Attaching through-loading bag to middle seat belt buckle of rear seats

Loading

- Open the boot lid/luggage compartment door.
- Push the unlock button Ⓐ downwards ⇒ page 92, fig. 105 and fold the lid (with armrest) to the front.
- Place the empty through-loading bag in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip lies in the boot.
- Push the objects into the through-loading bag from the boot ⇒ ⚠.

Securing

- Insert the securing belt of the through-loading bag Ⓐ into the middle seat belt buckle Ⓒ ⇒ fig. 106.
- Place the securing belt on ski sport articles in the middle between the bindings ⇒ ⚠.
- Pull the securing belt tight at the free end of the belt Ⓑ.

Stowing

– Fold the lid and the armrest up to the stop in upward direction - the lid must click into place audibly. You can recognize this on the fact that the red field above the unlocking button Ⓐ of the luggage compartment is not visible ⇒ page 92, fig. 105.

– Carefully fold the empty (dry) through-loading bag together, place it in the luggage compartment and secure it to prevent it slipping.

WARNING

- **After placing items into the through-loading bag, you must secure the bag with the securing belt Ⓐ.**
- **The securing belt must hold the items tight.**
- **Ensure that the securing belt on ski sport articles lies in the middle between the bindings (see imprint on the through-loading bag).**

Note

- Place the skis with the tips facing the front, snowboards and ski sticks with the tips facing the rear into the through-loading bag.
- If there are several pairs of skis in the through-loading bag, ensure that the bindings are positioned at the same height.
- The through-loading bag must never be folded together or stowed when moist. ■

Side compartments*

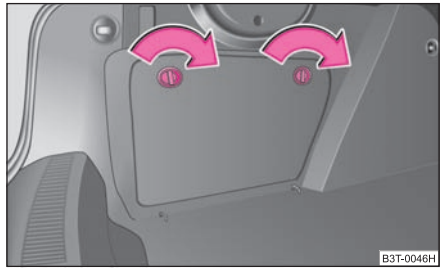

Fig. 107 Luggage compartment: Left side compartment

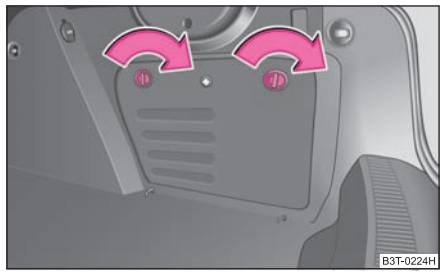

Fig. 108 Luggage compartment: Right side compartment

– You can open the compartment by turning the locks in the direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 107 ⇒ fig. 108.

On some vehicles the battery is located in the left compartment ⇒ page 216. This compartment is marked by the symbol and can be opened by turning the securing pins e.g with a coin or using a flat screwdriver.

In the right compartment ⇒ fig. 108 is located the CD changer*, the TV tuner* and the first-aid box. ■

Clothes hooks*

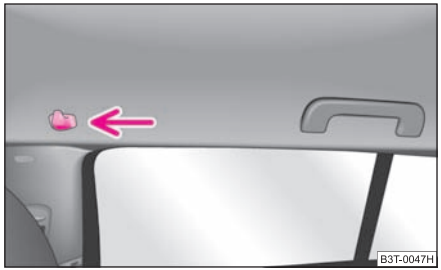

Fig. 109 Rear door: Clothes hooks

A clothes hook is located above the rear doors ⇒ fig. 109.

WARNING

- **Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.**
- **Use the hooks for hanging only light items of clothing and ensure that there are no heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets.**
- **Do not use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing otherwise this will interfere with the protection offered by the head airbag*.** ■

The air conditioning system

Climatic* (semi-automatic air conditioning system)

Description

The Climatic is a combined cooling and heating system. It makes it possible to optimally control the air temperature at any season of the year.

Description of the Climatic

It is important for your safety and for your driving comfort that the Climatic is operating properly.

The cooling only operates if button AC ⇒ page 97, fig. 110 (1) is pressed, and the following conditions are met:

- engine running,
- outside temperature above +2°C and
- blower switch switched on (positions 1 to 4).

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The wellbeing of the occupants of the car is enhanced as a result of this particularly at high outside temperatures and a high air humidity. The system prevents the windows misting up during the cold season of the year.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode in order to enhance the cooling effect ⇒ ⚠.

Air at a temperature of about 5°C may flow out of the vents under certain circumstances when the cooling system is operating. Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents and large differences in temperature, for example when getting out of the vehicle, can result in chills in sensitive persons.

The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of ice, snow or leaves in order to ensure that the heating and cooling systems operate properly.

After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is quite normal and not an indication of a leak!

⚠ WARNING

- **For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting. Please familiarize yourself about how to correctly operate the heating and ventilation systems, how to demist and defrost the windows, as well as with the cooling mode.**
- **You should not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, divert your attention and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch recirculated air mode off as soon as the windows begin misting up.**

Note

- We recommend that you do not smoke in the vehicle when the recirculating air mode is operating since the smoke which is drawn at the evaporator from the interior of the vehicle forms deposits in the evaporator of the air conditioning system. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor). ■

Using the system

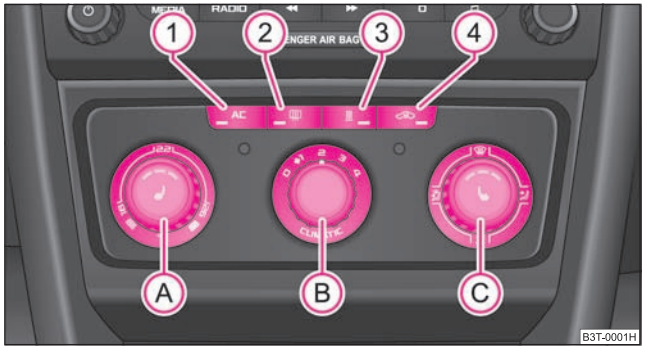

Fig. 110 Climatic: Control elements

Setting temperature

- Turn the control dial (A) ⇒ fig. 110 to the right in order to increase the temperature.
- Turn the control dial (A) to the left in order to increase the temperature.

Controlling blower

- Turn the blower switch (B) into one of the positions, 1 to 4, in order to switch the blower on.
- Turn the blower switch (B) into position 0 in order to switch the blower off.
- Pressing button (4) - causes the recirculating air system ⇒ page 99 to be switched on.

Control for air distribution

- You can adjust the direction of the air flow ⇒ page 99 using air distribution regulator (C).

Switching cooling on and off

- Press the button AC (1) ⇒ fig. 110. The warning light lights up in the button.
- When you again press the switch AC, the cooling system is switched off. The warning light in the button goes out.

Rear window heater

- Press button (2). Further information ⇒ page 63.

Auxiliary heating

- Press the button (3) in order to directly switch on/off the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation. Further information ⇒ page 106.

The set temperature will be automatically maintained other than when the control dial is on the extreme right or extreme left position:

- Extreme right position - full heating;
- Extreme left position - full cooling;
- The blower should aways be on to prevent the windows from misting up.

Note

- The whole heat output will be needed to unfrost the windscreen and side windows. No warm air will be fed to the footwell. This can lead to restriction of the heating comfort.
- The used air streams out through the air removal openings in the luggage compartment.
- If the cooling system has not been switched on for a lengthy period, odours may be produced at the evaporator because of deposits. Switch the cooling system on ▶

at least once a month for approximately 5 minutes at the highest blower stage - also during the cold season of the year - in order to remove such odours. Also open a window for a short time.

- Please refer to the information regarding recirculated air mode ⇒ page 99.

Set Climatic

Recommended settings of Climatic controls for the respective operating modes:

Set-up	Setting of the control dial			Button		Air outlet vents 2
	Ⓐ	Ⓑ	Ⓒ	1	4	
Defrosting the windscreen and side windows	recommended 22°C	3		switched off	do not switch on	open and align with the side window
Free windscreen and side windows from mist	desired temperature	2		switched on	do not switch on	open and align with the side window
The fastest heating	recommended 22°C	2		switched off	briefly switched on	open
Comfortable heating	desired temperature	2 or 3	or	switched off	do not switch on	open
The fastest cooling	recommended 22°C	briefly 4, then 2 or 3		switched on	briefly switched on	open
Optimal cooling	desired temperature	1, 2 or 3		switched on	do not switch on	open and align to the roof
Fresh air mode - ventilation	up to the stop towards the left	desired position		switched off	do not switch on	open

Recirculated air mode

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching recirculated air mode on

– Press the button (4) ⇒ page 97, fig. 110 the warning light lights up in the button.

Switching recirculated air mode off

– Press again the button - the warning light in the button goes out.

The recirculated air mode is switched off automatically if the air distribution control Ⓒ is in position ⇒ page 97, fig. 110. You can also switch recirculated air mode on again from this setting by repeatedly pressing button.

WARNING

You should not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, divert your attention and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch recirculated air mode off as soon as the windows begin misting up. ■

Air outlet vents

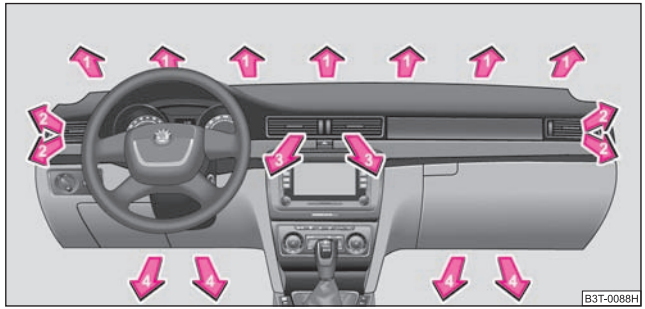

Fig. 111 Air vents at the front

Fig. 112 Air vents at the rear

Open air outlet vents

– Turn the rotary knob to position .

Close air outlet vents

– Turn the rotary knob to position **0**.

Redirecting air flow

– The horizontal as well as the vertical direction of the air flow is set with the handle in the middle of the air outlet vents.

You can set the air supply to the individual air outlet vents using the control dial (C) ⇒ page 97, fig. 110. The air outlet vents **2**, **3** ⇒ page 99, fig. 111 and **5** ⇒ page 99, fig. 112 can also be closed and opened individually.

Unwarmed or cooled air will flow out of the air outlet vents according to the setting of control dial (A) ⇒ page 97, fig. 110 and the atmospheric conditions. ■

Using the air conditioning system economically

The compressor on the air conditioning system uses power from the engine when in cooling mode which will effect the fuel consumption.

It recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be switched on while travelling when the window is open.

The desired interior temperature can also be achieved without switching in the cooling system just by switching to fresh air mode.

For the sake of the environment

When you economize on fuel, you also reduce pollutant emissions. ■

Operational problems

If the cooling system does not operate at outside temperatures higher than +5 °C, there is a problem in the system. The reasons for this may be:

- The fuse on the air conditioning system has blown. Check the fuse, replace it if necessary ⇒ page 241.
- The cooling system has switched off automatically for a short time because the coolant temperature of the engine is too hot ⇒ page 11.

If you are not able to rectify the operational problem yourself, or if the cooling capacity decreases, switch the cooling system off. Contact a specialist garage. ■

Climatronic* (automatic air conditioning)

Description

The Climatronic system is a combination of an automatic heating, fresh air and cooling system which provides optimal comfort for the occupants of the car.

The Climatronic maintains fully automatically a convenience temperature. This is achieved by automatically varying the temperature of the outflowing air, the blower stages and the air distribution. The system also takes into account sunlight which eliminates the need to alter the settings manually. The **automatic mode** ⇒ page 102 ensures maximum wellbeing of the occupants at all times of the year.

Description of Climatronic system

The cooling operates only if the following conditions are met:

- engine running,
- outside temperature above +2°C,
- AC switched on.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The wellbeing of the occupants of the car is enhanced as a result of this particularly at high outside temperatures and a high air humidity. The system prevents the windows misting up during the cold season of the year.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode in order to enhance the cooling effect ⇒ page 103.

The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of ice, snow or leaves in order to ensure that the heating and cooling systems operate properly.

The AC compressor is switched off at a high coolant temperature in order to provide cooling at a high load of the engine.

After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is quite normal and not an indication of a leak!

Recommended setting for all periods of the year:

- Set the desired temperature, we recommend 22 °C.
- Press the button AUTO ⇒ page 102, fig. 113.
- Move the air outlet vents **2** and **3** so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.

Aeration of the vehicle when ignition is switched off*

On models fitted with power sliding/tilting roof with sollar cells, the fresh air blower is automatically switched over to “solar mode” if the sun ray's are sufficient after switching off the ignition. The solar cells on the sliding/tilting roof deliver power for the fresh air blower. This supplies the interior of the car with fresh air.

For an optimum ventilation, the air outlet vents **2** and **3** must be opened ⇒ page 105, fig. 114.

The ventilation functions only when the sliding/tilting roof is closed.

WARNING

- **For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting. Please familiarize yourself about how to correctly operate the heating and ventilation systems, how to demist and defrost the windows, as well as with the cooling mode.**
- **You should not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as “stale” air may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, divert your attention and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch recirculated air mode off as soon as the windows begin misting up.**

Note

- If the cooling system has not been switched on for a lengthy period, odours may be produced at the evaporator because of deposits. Switch the cooling system on at least once a month for approximately 5 minutes at the highest blower stage - also during the cold season of the year - in order to remove such odours. Also open a window for a short time.
- We recommend that you do not smoke in the vehicle when the recirculating air mode is operating since the smoke which is drawn at the evaporator from the interior of the vehicle forms deposits in the evaporator of the air conditioning system. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).
- The used air streams out through the air removal openings in the luggage compartment.
- On vehicles equipped with a factory-fitted radio* or navigation*, the information of the Climatronic is also shown on the display. You can switch off this function for the Radio* - see operating instructions for radio. This function cannot be switched off during Navigation*.
- Using the cooling economically ⇒ page 100.
- Operational problems ⇒ page 100. ■

Overview of the control elements

The controls enable a separate setting of the temperature for the left and right side.

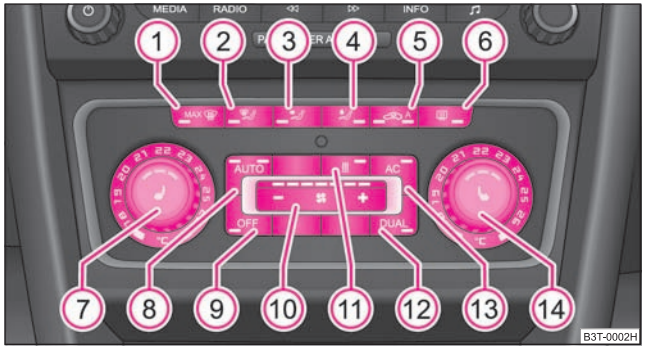

Fig. 113 Climatronic: Control elements

The buttons

(1) Defrost windscreen intensively MAX
(2) Air flow to the windows
(3) Air flow to head
(4) Air flow in the footwell
(5) Recirculated air mode A with air quality sensor*
(6) Rear window heater

Buttons / control dial

(7) Setting of the temperature for the left side.
(8) Automatic mode AUTO
(9) Switching off Climatronic OFF
(10) Setting the blower speed
(11) Button for direct switching on/off of auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating)* ⇒ page 106
(12) Switching on/off of the temperature setting in dual mode DUAL
(13) Switching cooling on and off AC
(14) Setting of the temperature for the right side.

Note

Below the top row of buttons is located the interior temperature sensor. Do not glue or cover over the sensor, otherwise it could have an unfavourable effect on the Climatronic. ■

Automatic mode

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

Switching automatic mode on

– Set a temperature between +18 °C and +26 °C.
– Move the air outlet vents **1** and **2** ⇒ page 105, fig. 114 so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.
– Press the button AUTO. In the right or left top corner a warning light lights up, depending on which unit was last selected.

If the warning light in the top right corner of the button AUTO lights up, the Climatronic operates in “HIGH” mode. The “HIGH” mode is the standard setting of the Climatronic.

When pressing again the button AUTO, the Climatronic changes into the “LOW” mode and the warning light in the top left corner lights up. The Climatronic uses only in this mode the lower blower speed. However taking into account the noise level, this is more comfortable, yet be aware that the effectiveness of the air conditioning system is reduced particularly if the vehicle is fully occupied.

By pressing again the button AUTO, you change into the “HIGH” mode.

The automatic mode is switched off by pressing the button for the air distribution or increasing or decreasing the blower speed. The temperature is nevertheless regulated. ■

Switching cooling on and off

Switching cooling on and off

– Press the button AC. The warning light lights up in the button.

– When you again press the switch AC, the cooling system is switched off. The warning light in the button goes out. Only the function of the ventilation remains active when no lower temperature than the outside temperature can be reached. ■

Setting temperature

You can separate the interior temperature for the left and right side separately.

– You can set the temperature for both sides after switching on the ignition with the control dial 7.

– If you wish to set the temperature for the right side, turn the control dial 14. The warning light in the button DUAL lights up, this indicates that differing temperatures for the left and right side can be set.

If the warning light in the button DUAL lights up, the temperature for both sides cannot be set with the control dial 7. You can reinitiate this function by pressing the button DUAL. The warning light in the button which indicates the possibility to set differing temperatures for the left and right side, goes out.

You can set the interior temperature between +18°C and +26°C. The interior temperature is regulated automatically within this range. If you chose a temperature lower than +18°C, a blue symbol lights up at the start of the numerical scale. If you chose a temperature higher than +26°C, a red symbol lights up at the end of the numerical scale. In both limit positions the Climatronic operates at maximum cooling or heating capacity, respectively. The temperature is not controlled in this case.

Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (in particular at the leg area) and large differences in temperature, for example when getting out of the vehicle, can result in chills in sensitive persons. ■

Recirculated air mode

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching recirculated air mode on

– Press the button – the warning light lights up in the button.

Switching recirculated air mode off

– Press again the button or the button AUTO - the warning light in the button goes out.

WARNING

You should not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, divert your attention and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch recirculated air mode off as soon as the windows begin misting up.

Note

If the windscreen mists up, press the button MAX 1 ⇒ page 102, fig. 113. After the windscreen has been demisted, press the button AUTO. ■

Automatic air distribution control*

When the automatic air distribution control is switched on, an air quality sensor measures the concentration of pollutants in the drawn in air.

If a considerable increase in concentration of pollutants is recognized by the air quality sensor, the air distribution control will temporarily be switched off. If the concentration of pollutants decreases to the normal level, the air distribution control is automatically switched off so that fresh air can be guided into the vehicle interior.

Switch on automatic air distribution control

– Press the button repeatedly AUTO* until the warning light on the right side of the button lights up.

Switch off automatic air distribution control temporarily

– If the air quality sensor does not switch on automatically when there is a nauseating smell, you can switch it on yourself by pressing the button AUTO*. The warning light lights up in the button on the left side.

Switch on automatic air distribution control again

– Hold the button pressed AUTO* for more than 2 seconds and on the right side of the button the warning light lights up.

Switch off automatic air distribution control

– Press again the button AUTO* until the warning lights in the button go out.

WARNING

You should not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, divert your attention and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an acci-

WARNING (continued)

dent increases. Switch recirculated air mode off as soon as the windows begin misting up.

Note

- If the windscreen mists up, press the button MAX 1 ⇒ page 102, fig. 113. After the windscreen has been demisted, press the button AUTO.
- The automatic air distribution control operates only if the outside temperature is higher than approx. 2°C. ■

Controlling blower

There are a total of seven blower stages available.

The Climatronic system controls the blower stages automatically in line with the interior temperature. You can also, however, adapt the blower stages manually to suit your particular needs.

– Press again the button on the left side (reduce blower speed) or on the right side (increase blower speed).

If you switch off the blower, the Climatronic is switched off.

The set blower speed is displayed above the button when the respective number of warning lights come on.

WARNING

- **"Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases.**
- **Do not switch the Climatronic system off for longer than necessary.**
- **Switch the Climatronic system on as soon as the windows mist up.** ■

Defrosting windscreen

Defrosting windscreen – switching on

– Press the button MAX ⇒ page 102, fig. 113.

Defrosting windscreen – switching off

– Once again press the button MAX or the button AUTO.

The temperature control is controlled automatically. More air flows out of the air outlet vents **1**. ■

Air outlet vents

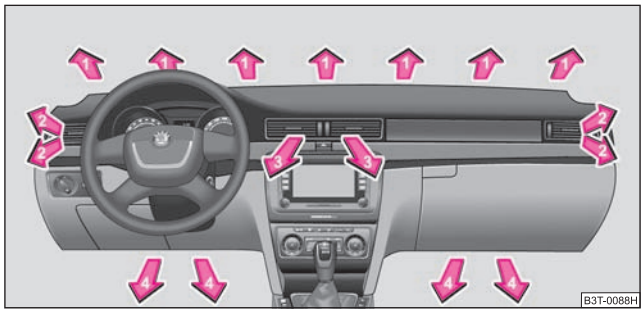

Fig. 114 Air vents at the front

Fig. 115 Air vents at the rear

Open air outlet vents

– Turn the rotary knob to position .

Close air outlet vents

– Turn the rotary knob to position **0**.

Redirecting air flow

– The horizontal as well as the vertical direction of the air flow is set with the handle in the middle of the air outlet vents.

You can control the air distribution to the air outlet vents via the buttons of the operating part of the Climatronic ⇒ page 102. Air outlet vents **2**, **3** ⇒ fig. 114 and **5** ⇒ fig. 115 can also be opened or closed individually.

Note

The air outlet vents **1** ensure in the ventilation and cooling mode for a comfortable (no-draught) ventilation of the interior of the vehicle, also if the air outlet vents **3** are closed. ■

Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)*

Description and important information

The auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) heats or supplies the interior of the vehicle with fresh air independent of the engine.

Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating)

The auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating) functions in connection with the Climatic or Climatronic.

It can be used when stationary, when engine is switched off for preheating of the vehicle as well as while driving (e.g. during the heating phase of the engine).

The auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating) warms up the coolant during the combustion of fuel from the vehicle tank. The coolant warms up the air, which (if the blower speed is not set to zero) flows into the occupant compartment.[10)]

Auxiliary ventilation

The auxiliary ventilation enables fresh air to flow into the vehicle interior by switching off the engine, whereby the interior temperature is effectively decreased (e.g. with the vehicle parked in the sun).

WARNING

- **The auxiliary heating must never be operated in closed rooms – risk of poisoning!**
- **The auxiliary heating must not be running during refueling – risk of fire.**
- **The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating is located on the underside of the vehicle. Therefore do not place the vehicle, if you wish to operate the auxiliary heating, in such a way that the exhaust gases of the auxiliary heating can come easily into contact with inflammable materials (e.g. dry grass) or easily inflammable substances (e.g. fuel run out).**

Note

- If the auxiliary heating runs, the fuel consumption comes from the vehicle tank. Therefore the auxiliary heating should not be operated, if there is very little fuel in the tank.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating, which is located on the underside of the vehicle, must not be clogged and the exhaust flow must not be blocked.
- If the auxiliary heating and ventilation is running, the vehicle battery discharges. If the auxiliary heating and ventilation has been operated several times over a longer period, the vehicle must be driven a few kilometers in order to recharge the vehicle battery.
- The auxiliary heating only switches the blower on, if it has achieved a coolant temperature of approx. 50 °C.
- At low outside temperatures, this can result in a formation of water vapour in the area of the engine compartment. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- After switching off the auxiliary heating, the coolant pump runs for a short period.
- The auxiliary heating and ventilation does not switch on or comes on, if the vehicle battery indicates a low loading state.
- The auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating) switches off, if in the information display: **Please refuel!** is indicated or was indicated before switching off the ignition.
- When driving, the auxiliary heating can only be switched on, if the exterior temperature is lower than 5 °C.
- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of ice, snow or leaves in order to ensure that the auxiliary heating operates properly.
- So that warm air can flow into the vehicle interior after switching on the auxiliary heating, you must maintain the temperature normally selected by you (we recommend 22°C). It is recommended to put the air flow in the position .
- On vehicles with DPF (diesel particle filter) the warm coolant heats up the engine. ■

[10)] However the coolant does not warm up the engine.

Using the system

So that the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) functions according to your expectations, it is necessary to carry out the basic setting before its programming.

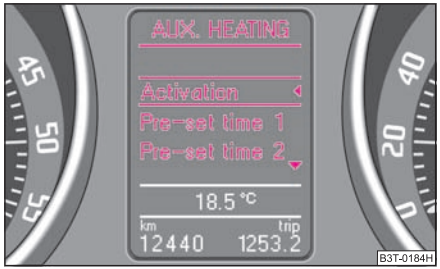

Fig. 116 Information display: Aux. Heating (auxiliary heating)

Basic setting

- In the information display, select from the menu **Main menu** the Menu **Setup (settings)**.
- In the menu **Settings** select the menu **Aux. heating**.
- In the menu **Aux. heating** ⇒ fig. 116 select the menu **Weekday** and set the current day.
- Return to a higher level by selecting the menu **Back**, i. e. in the menu **Aux. Heating**.
- In the menu **Aux. Heating** select the menu **Running time** and set the desired operating period in steps of 1 minute. The operating period can be 5 to 60 minutes.
- Return to a higher level by selecting the menu **Back** in the menu **Aux. heating**.
- In the menu **Aux. heating** select the menu **Mode**.
- In the menu **Mode** select the desired mode **Heating** or **Ventilation**. ■

Programming

For the programming of the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) in the menu **Aux. heating** there are three pre-set times:

- **Pre-set time 1**
- **Pre-set time 2**
- **Pre-set time 3**

In each pre-set time, the day (if necessary each day = daily) and the time (hour and minute) can be set for the operating period of the auxiliary heating and/or ventilation.

If you leave the pre-set menu by selecting menu **Back** or do not operate the display for longer than 10 seconds, the set values are stored, but the pre-set time is not active.

Both other pre-set times can be programmed and stored in the same way.

If you select the menu **Activate** after setting the desired values, **Pre-set time (weekday, hours, minute) activated!** is displayed in the display and the set pre-set time is active.

Only one programmed pre-set time can be active.

The last programmed pre-set time remains active.

The active pre-set time can be changed in the menu **Aux. heating** in the menu **Activation** by selecting a pre-set time.

The prerequisite for the correct switching on of the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) according to the programmed pre-set time is the correct setting of the current time and the weekday ⇒ page 107.

If the system is running, a warning light in the button for direct switching on/off of the auxiliary heating lights up.

The running system deactivates after expiration of the operating period or is deactivated earlier by pressing the button for direct switching on/off of the auxiliary heating ⇒ page 109.

The deactivation of a desired pre-set time can be performed by selecting the menu **Deactive** in the menu **Active** .

It is possible to re-establish the factory setting using the menu **Factory setting** in the menu **Aux. heating**. ■

Radio remote control

The auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) can be switched on or off with the remote control.

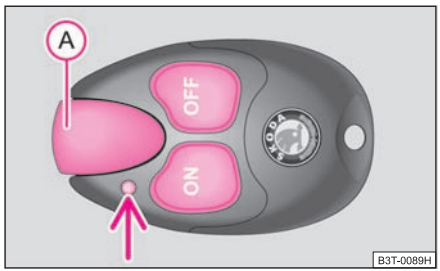

Fig. 117 Auxiliary heating: Radio remote control

– For switching on, press the button (ON).

– For switching off, press the button (OFF).

The transmitter and the battery are housed in the housing of the remote control. The receiver is located in the interior of the car.

If the battery is properly charged, the effective range is up to 600 m. For switching on or off the auxiliary heating, hold the remote control vertically with the antenna (A) ⇒ fig. 117 towards the top. You must not cover over the antenna with the fingers or the palm of the hand. Obstacles between the remote control and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and a weaker battery can clearly reduce the range.

The auxiliary heating can only be switched on or off with the remote control, if the distance between the remote control and the vehicle is at least 2 m.

Warning light in the remote control

The warning light in the remote control ⇒ fig. 117 indicates after a keystroke if the remote control signal was received by the auxiliary heating and if the battery is adequately charged.

Display warning light	Importance
Lights up green for 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating was switched on.
Lights up red for 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating was switched off.
Slowly flashes green for 2 seconds.	The ignition signal was not received.
Quickly flashes green for 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating is blocked, e. g because the tank is nearly empty or there is a fault in the auxiliary heating.
Flashes red for 2 seconds.	The switch off signal was not received.
Lights up orange for 2 seconds, then green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was received.
Lights up orange for 2 seconds, then flashes green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was not received.
Flashes orange for 5 seconds.	The battery is discharged, however the switching on or off signal was not received.

Caution

There are electronic components in the remote control, protect the remote control against water, severe shocks and direct sun rays. ■

Changing the battery of the radio remote control

If the warning light of the remote control indicates a weak or discharged battery, ⇒ fig. 117, it must be replaced. The battery is located under a cover on the back of the remote control.

– Place a coin into the gap of the battry cover and by turning to the left, unlock the cover.

– Change the battery, insert the cover and lock it by turning to the right.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of an old battery in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the battery.
- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery. ■

Direct switching on/off

Fig. 118 Button for direct switching on/off of the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) on the operating part of the Climatic

The auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) can be switched on or off at any time **directly** using the button on the operating part of the Climatic ⇒ fig. 118 or on the operating part of the Climatronic.

The auxiliary heating system (auxiliary heating and ventilation) switches off automatically after expiration of the set operating period in the menu **Running time**, if it is not switched off beforehand by you. ■

Starting-off and Driving

Setting steering wheel position

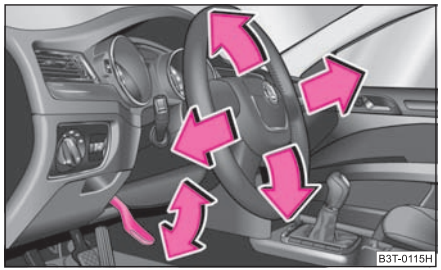

Fig. 119 Adjustable steering wheel: Lever next to the steering column

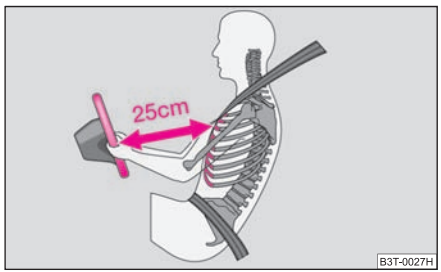

Fig. 120 Safe distance to steering wheel

You can set the height and the forward/back position of the steering wheel to the desired position.

- Adjust the driver seat ⇒ page 71.
- Pull the lever below the steering column ⇒ fig. 119 down ⇒ ⚠.
- Set the steering wheel to the desired position (concerning height and forward/back position).
- Push the lever upwards as far as the stop.

⚠ WARNING

- **You must not adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving!**
- **The driver must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel ⇒ fig. 120. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!**
- **For safety reasons the lever must always be firmly pushed up to avoid the steering wheel altering its position unintentionally when driving – risk of accident!**
- **If you adjust the steering wheel further towards the head, you will reduce the protection offered by the driver airbag in the event of an accident. Check that the steering wheel is aligned to the chest.**
- **When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel firmly in the 12 o'clock position or in another way (e.g. in the middle of the steering wheel or at the inner steering wheel edge). In such cases, injuries to the arms, the hands and the head can occur when the driver airbag is deployed.** ■

Ignition lock

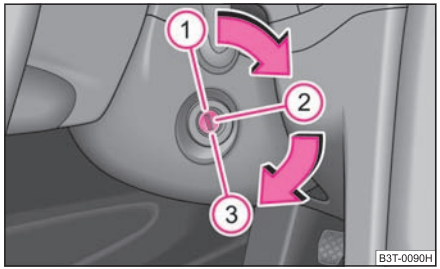

Fig. 121 Ignition lock positions

Petrol engines

(1) - ignition switched off, engine off, the steering can be locked

(2) - ignition switched on

(3) - start engine

Diesel engines

(1) - interruption of fuel supply, ignition switched off, engine off, the steering can be locked.

(2) - heating glow plugs on, ignition switched on

- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

(3) - start engine

Applies to all models:

Position (1)

To **lock the steering**, with the ignition key withdrawn, turn the steering wheel until the steering locking pin is heard to engage. You should always lock the steering as a general rule if you leave your vehicle. This acts as a deterrent against possible theft of your vehicle ⇒ ⚠.

Position (2)

Move the steering wheel back and forward a little if the ignition key cannot, or cannot easily be turned into this position, in order to release the steering lock.

Position (3)

The engine is started in this position. At the same time switched on low beam or main beam or other electrical components with major power consumption are briefly switched off. The ignition key moves back into position (2) when one releases the key.

The ignition key must be turned back into position (1) each time before starting the engine again. The starter repeat lock in the ignition lock prevents the starter being engaged when the engine is running and thus getting damaged.

Ignition key withdrawal lock (automatic gearbox)

You can only withdraw the ignition key after switching off the ignition if the selector lever is in position **P**.

⚠ WARNING

- **When driving, the ignition key must always be in the position (2) (ignition switched on) without the engine running. This position is indicated by the warning lights coming on. If this is not the case, it could result in unexpected locking of the steering wheel – risk of accident!**
- **Only remove the ignition key from the ignition lock when the vehicle has come to a standstill (put on the handbrake or select the selector lever position P). The steering lock can engage immediately – risk of accident!**
- **Always withdraw the ignition key if you are going to leave the vehicle, even for a short time. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. The children might otherwise start the engine or switch on electrical equipment (e.g. power windows) – risk of accident or injury!** ■

Starting the engine

General

You can only start the engine only using an original ignition key.

- Place the gearshift lever into neutral (or place the selector lever to the position **P** or **N** in the case of an automatic gearbox) and put on the handbrake firmly before starting the engine.
- The clutch pedal should be fully depressed when starting the engine which means that the starter only has to crank the engine.
- Let go of the key as soon as the engine starts otherwise there may be damage to the starter.

The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine until oil pressure can be built up in the hydraulic valve clearance compensation. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.

If the engine does not start ...

You can use the battery of another vehicle as a jump-start aid ⇒ page 236.

It is only possible to tow-start vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox. The tow-starting distance must not be more than 50 metres.

WARNING

- **Never run the engine in non ventilated or enclosed areas. The exhaust gases of the engine contain besides the odorless and colourless carbon monoxide a poisonous gas – hazard! Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.**
- **Never leave your vehicle unattended with the engine running.**

Caution

- The starter may only be operated (ignition key position (3)), if the engine is not running. If the starter is immediately operated after switching off the engine, the starter or the engine can be damaged.
- Avoid high engine revolutions, full throttle and high engine loads as long as the engine has not yet reached its normal operating temperature – risk of damaging the engine!
- Vehicles which are fitted with an exhaust gas catalytic converter should not be tow-started over a distance of more than 50 metres.

For the sake of the environment

Never warm up the engine when the vehicle is standing. Drive off right away. Through this the engine reaches its operating temperature more rapidly and the pollutant emissions are lower. ■

Petrol engines

These engines are fitted with a starter system which selects the correct fuel/air mixture for every external air temperature.

- Do not operate accelerator before and when starting engine.
- Interrupt the attempt at starting after 10 seconds if the engine does not start right awayand wait for about 30 seconds before repeating the attempt.
- It is possible that the fuse on the electrical fuel pump is defect if the engine still does not start. Check the fuse and replace it if necessary ⇒ page 241.
- Contact the nearest specialist garage to obtain professional assistance.

It may be necessary, if the engine is **very hot**, to slightly depress the accelerator after the engine has started. ■

Diesel engines

Glow plug system

Diesel engines are equipped with a glow plug system, the preglow period being controlled automatically in line with the coolant temperature and outside temperature.

The preglow indicator light ᘐ comes on after the ignition has been switched on. ▶

You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

- You should start the engine immediately after the glow plug warning light ∞ has gone out.
- The glow plug warning light will come on for about one second if the engine is at a normal operating temperature or if the outside temperature is above +5°C. This means that you can start the engine **right away**.
- Interrupt the attempt at starting after 10 seconds if the engine does not start right awayand wait for about 30 seconds before repeating the attempt.
- It is possible that the fuse on the diesel preglow system is defect if the engine still does not start. Check the fuse and replace it if necessary ⇒ page 241.
- Contact the nearest specialist garage to obtain professional assistance.

Starting the engine after the fuel tank has run dry

It may take longer than normal to start the engine after refuelling if the fuel tank has run completely dry - up to one minute. This is because the fuel system must first of all be filled while the attempting to start the engine. ■

Switching off the engine

– The engine can be switched off by turning the ignition key from position (1) into ⇒ page 111, fig. 121.

WARNING

- **Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary - risk of accident!**
- **The brake booster only operates when the engine is running. Greater physical effort for braking is required when engine is switched off. Because if you do not stop as normal, this can cause an accident and severe injuries.**

Caution

you should not switch the engine off right away at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated for a lengthy period at high loads but should be allowed it to run at idling speed for about 2 minutes. This prevents any accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Note

- The radiator fan may continue running for a further 10 minutes or so after the engine and the ignition have been switched off. The coolant fan may, however, also switch on again after some time if the coolant temperature rises because of an accumulation of heat in the engine or if the engine is warm and the engine compartment is additionally heated by strong sunlight.
- This is why particular care is required when carrying out any work in the engine compartment ⇒ page 209, "Working in the engine compartment". ■

Shifting (manual gearbox)

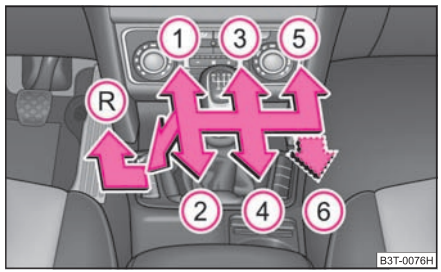

Fig. 122 The shift pattern: 5-speed or 6-speed manual gearbox

Shift into reverse only when the car is stationary. Depress the clutch pedal and hold it fully depressed. Wait a moment before engaging reverse gear in order to avoid any shift noises.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

WARNING

Never engage the reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

Note

- One should not lay the hand on the shift lever while driving the vehicle. The pressure of the hand will be transferred to the gearshift forks in the gearbox. This can, over a period of time, lead to early wear of the gearshift forks.
- Depress the clutch pedal fully when changing gears, in order to avoid unnecessary wear and damage to the clutch and gearbox parts. ■

Handbrake

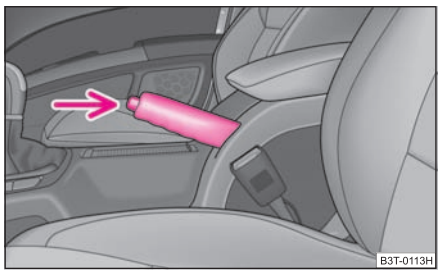

Fig. 123 Centre console: Handbrake

Applying the handbrake

– Pull the handbrake lever up fully.

Releasing the handbrake

– Pull the handbrake lever up slightly **and at the same time** press in the locking button ⇒ fig. 123.

– Hold the button pressed and push the handbrake lever down fully ⇒ ⚠.

The handbrake warning light (!) lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds and the following text appears in the display* if you have inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied:

Release parking brake!

The handbrake warning is activated if you drive at a speed of more than 6 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

WARNING

- **Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can result in the rear brakes overheating which will have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident! In addition this can result in premature wear of the rear brake pads.**
- **Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. The children might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear. The vehicle might then move off – risk of accident!**

Caution

After the car has come to a stop, always first of all apply the handbrake firmly before then additionally engaging a gear (manual gearbox) or moving the selector lever into position **P** (automatic gearbox). ■

Rear parking aid*

The parking aid provides a warning of obstacles behind the vehicle.

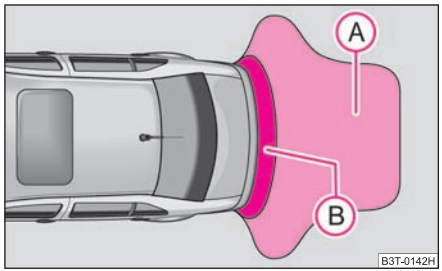

Fig. 124 Parking aid: Detection range of rear sensors

The audible parking aid determines the distance between the rear bumper and an obstacle located behind the vehicle with the aid of ultrasound sensors. The tones of the parking aid can be adapted in the menu of the information display* ⇒ page 23. The sensors are integrated in the rear bumper.

Range of sensors

The clearance warning begins at a distance of about 160 cm from the obstacle (area (A) ⇒ fig. 124). The interval between the warning signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced.

A continuous tone sounds from a clearance of just 30 cm (Bereich (B)) - danger area. **You should not reverse any further after this signal sounds!** If the vehicle is equipped with a factory-fitted towing device*, the border of the danger area starts - continuous tone - 5 cm further behind the vehicle. The vehicle can be extended through an installed detachable towing device.

On vehicles equipped with a factory-fitted radio* or navigation*, the distance to the obstruction is shown graphically on the display. On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, the sensors are deactivated when towing a trailer. The driver is also informed of the radio* or the navigation* by a graphic display (vehicle towing a trailer) on the display. The radio* or navigation*, which is factory-fitted, can be set so that the play function volume decreases when activating the parking aid, see Owner's Manual radio* or navigation*. This improves the audibility of the parking aid.

Activating

The parking aid is activated automatically when **reverse gear** is engaged and the ignition is turned on. This is confirmed by a brief acknowledgement signal.

Deactivating

The parking aid is deactivated by removing the reverse gear.

WARNING

- **The parking aid is not a substitute for the driver paying proper attention and it is always the driver's responsibility to take care when parking the vehicle or carrying out similar manoeuvres.**
- **You should therefore satisfy yourself, before reversing, that there is no small obstacle, such as a rock, thin post, trailer drawbar etc., behind your vehicle. Such an obstacle might not be within the range detected by the sensors.**
- **Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the signal of the parking aid. Thus, these objects or people who wear such clothing are not recognised by the sensors of the parking aid.**

Note

- The parking aid does not operate if you are towing a trailer (applies to models which feature a factory-fitted towing device*).
- If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after switching the ignition on and engaging reverse gear, and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. Have the fault rectified by a specialist workshop.
- The sensors must be kept clean and free of ice to enable the parking aid to operate properly.
- If the parking aid is activated and the selector lever of the automatic gearbox is in the position (P), warning signal indicates interruption (vehicle can no longer move). ■

Front and rear parking aid*

The parking aid provides a warning of obstacles in front and behind the vehicle.

Fig. 125 Activating the parking aid

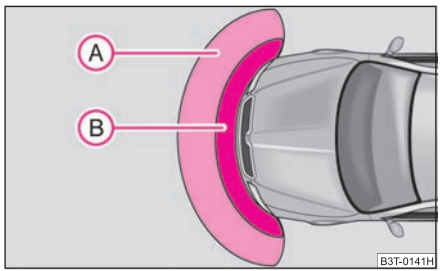

Fig. 126 Parking aid: Detection range of the front sensors

The audible parking aid determines the distance between the front or rear bumper and an obstacle with the aid of ultrasound sensors. The sensors are integrated in the front and rear bumper. The signal tones for the front parking aid sound higher as standard than for the rear parking aid. The tones of the parking aid can be adapted in the menu of the information display* ⇒ page 23.

Range of sensors

The distance warning begins at a distance of about 120 cm from the obstacle in front of the vehicle (area Ⓐ ⇒ fig. 126) and about 160 cm from the obstacle behind the vehicle (area Ⓐ ⇒ page 115, fig. 124). The interval between the warning signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced.

A continuous tone sounds from a clearance of just 30 cm (Bereich Ⓑ) - danger area. **You should not reverse any further after this signal sounds!** If the vehicle is equipped with a factory-fitted towing device*, the border of the danger area starts - continuous tone - 5cm further behind the vehicle. The vehicle can be extended through an installed detachable towing device.

On vehicles equipped with a factory-fitted radio* or navigation*, the distance to the obstruction is shown graphically on the display. On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, the rear sensors are deactivated when towing a trailer. The driver is also informed of the radio* or the navigation* by a graphic display (vehicle towing a trailer) on the display. The radio* or navigation*, which is factory-fitted, can be set so that the play function volume decreases when activating the parking aid, see Owner's Manual radio* or navigation*. This improves the audibility of the parking aid.

Activating

The parking aid is activated when the **reverse gear** is engaged and the ignition is turned on or by pressing the button ⇒ fig. 125 - the symbol P lights up in the button. The activation is confirmed by a brief acknowledgement signal.

Deactivating

The parking aid is deactivated after pressing the button P ⇒ fig. 125 or at a speed of more than 10 km/h - the symbol P in the button is no longer illuminated.

WARNING

- **The parking aid is not a substitute for the driver paying proper attention and it is always the driver's responsibility to take care when reversing the vehicle or carrying out similar manoeuvres.**
- **You should therefore satisfy yourself, before reversing, that there is no small obstacle, such as a rock, thin post, trailer drawbar etc., in front or behind your vehicle. Such an obstacle might not be within the range detected by the sensors.**
- **Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the signal of the parking aid. Thus, these objects or**

WARNING (continued)

people who wear such clothing are not recognised by the sensors of the parking aid.

Note

- Only the front parking aid operates if you are towing a trailer (applies only to models which feature a factory-fitted towing device*).
- If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. The fault is confirmed additionally when the symbol P flashes in the button ⇒ page 116, fig. 125. Have the fault rectified by a specialist workshop.
- The sensors must be kept clean and free of ice to enable the parking aid to operate properly.
- If the parking aid is activated and the selector lever of the automatic gearbox is in the position (P), warning signal indicates interruption (vehicle can no longer move). ■

Park Assist*

Description and important information

The park assist assists you when parking in a suitable parallel parking place between two vehicles or behind a vehicle.

The park assist automatically searches for suitable parking spaces after switching on the ignition and when driving up to 30 km/h.

During the parking procedure the park assist only takes over the steering movements, the pedals continue to be operated by the driver.

Function of the system is based on:

- Length and depth measurement of the parking spaces when driving
- Evaluation of the size of the parking space
- Definition of the correct position of the vehicle for parking
- Calculating the line on which the vehicle drives backwards into the parking place
- Actuation of the steering force assistance, automatic spinning of the wheels of the front axle when parking.

WARNING

The park assist does not take away the responsability from the driver when parking.

- **Pay particular attention to small children and animals as they would not be recognised by the sensors of the parking aid.**
- **Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the signal of the park assist or the parking aid. Thus, these objects or people who wear such clothing are not recognised by the sensors of the parking aid.**
- **The external sound source of the park assist and the parking aid can be disruptively influenced and under unfavourable conditions, objects or people cannot be recognised by the sensors of the parking aid.**

Caution

- If other vehicles are parked behind or on the kurb, the park assist guides your vehicle beyond the kurb or onto it. Make sure that the wheels or the wheel rims of your vehicle are not damaged and if necessary intervene in time.
- You should satisfy yourself before parking that there is no small obstacle, such as a rock, thin post, trailer drawbar etc., in front or behind your vehicle. Such an obstacle might not be within the range detected by the sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces or structures of certain objects such as wire mesh fences, powder snow etc..., cannot be recognised by the system.
- The evaluation of the parking place and the parking procedure depends on the circumference of the wheels. The system does not function correctly if your vehicle is mounted with wheels of non-permissible size, snow chains or a temporary spare wheel (in order to reach the nearest workshop). If the tyres other than those excepted by the manufacturer are mounted, the resulting position of the vehicle in ▶

the parking place can differ slightly. This can be avoided through new calibration of the system in a specialist garage.

- The accuracy of the evaluation for the parking place can be influenced by the incorrectly determined outside temperature if the later is influenced by the thermal radiation of the engine i.e for stop and go in a traffic jam.
- In order to avoid damaging the sensors while cleaning with high-pressure cleaners or steam jets, the sensors must only be directly sprayed for short periods while a minimum distance of 10 cm must be observed.

Note

- A component of the park assist is the front and rear parking aid*.
- The electronic stability programme (ESP) must always be switched on for the parking procedure.
- Only the front parking aid operates if you are towing a trailer (applies only to models which feature a factory-fitted towing device*). This is why it is not possible to park backwards with the help of the park assist when towing a trailer.
- The sensors must be kept clean and free of ice to enable the parking aid to operate properly. ■

Switch on display of the park assist in the information display*

Fig. 127 Switch on display of the park assist in the information display

Fig. 128 Information display: Finding a suitable parking place

Switch on display of the park assist in the information display*

– Press the button ⇒ fig. 127.

– Drive past the parking row up to maximum 30 km/h and with a distance of 0.5 m to 1.5 m ⇒ fig. 128.

Operate the turn signal for the driver's side if you wish to park on this side of the road. In the information display* the search area for the parking place is indicated on the driver's side.

If the button is pressed above a speed of 30 km/h, the display appears in the display of the instrument cluster as soon as you drive slower than 30 km/h.

Note

- If the park assist is switched on, a yellow warning light lights up in the button.
- The search for suitable parking places is automatic after switching on the ignition at speeds of more than 30 km/h. Searching for a parking place is performed at the same time on the driver and front passenger side.
- If the sensors find a suitable parking place, they store its parameters until another suitable parking place has been found or until a distance of 10 m had been driven after finding the parking place. This is why it is possible to switch on the park assist after driving past the driving place; on the information display* appears the information if this parking space is suitable for parking. ■

Parking with the help of the park assist and concluding the parking procedure

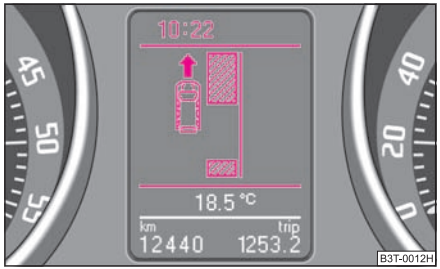

Fig. 129 Information display: Parking place recognized with the information to drive on

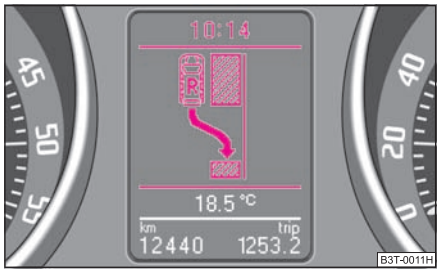

Fig. 130 Information display: Parking place recognized with the information to engage the reverse gear

The time limit for the parking procedure with the help of the park assist lasts 180 seconds.

- If the park assist has recognized a suitable parking place, the parking place is shown in the information display* ⇒ fig. 129.
- Drive on further until the display ⇒ fig. 130 appears.
- Bring the vehicle to a stop for at least 1 second.
- Engage the reverse gear or set the selector lever* in the position **R**.
- As soon as the following message is indicated in the information display*: **Steering intervention! Check area around veh.!** let go of the steering wheel, the steering will be taken over by the system.
- Observe the surroundings and drive backwards with a speed of maximum 7 km/h, at the same time operate the pedal.
- End the parking procedure from a distance on the basis of the information of the system.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and in the information display* the following message appears: **Steering intervention finished! Please take over steering!** .

If your vehicle is not properly parked, the position of the wheels is corrected by the system after disengaging the reverse gear when your vehicle is stationary, so that you can align the vehicle yourself during a forward movement after taking over the steering.

Switch off park assist

The park assist switches off during one of the following occurences:

- A speed of 30 km/h exceeded
- A speed of 7 km/h exceeded during the parking procedure
- A time limit of 180 seconds exceeded for engaging the reverse gear after switching on the park assist
- A time limit of 180 seconds exceeded for the parking procedure
- The button pressed for the park assist
- Parking aid activated
- Switch off ESP
- Intervention of the driver in the automatic steering procedure (stop the steering wheel)
- Disengage reverse gear or take out selector lever* out of the position **R** during the parking procedure.

Further warning and information texts of the park assist in the information display*:

Park Assist cancelled!

The parking procedure has ended or after switching on the ignition, the vehicle has not been driven above 10 km/h.

Park Assist: Speed too high!

Reduce the speed below 30 km/h.

Driver steering intervention! Please take over steering!

The parking procedure is ended through driver intervention.

Park Assist cancelled! ESP switched off!

The parking procedure cannot be carried out because the ESP system is switched off.

ESP switched off! Please take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because the ESP system was switched off during the parking procedure.

Park Assist cancelled! Trailer

The parking procedure is not possible because the trailer is hitched and a plug is inserted in the socket of the towing device.

Park Assist cancelled! Time limit exceeded

The parking procedure was not started because a time limit of 180 seconds for engaging the reverse gear was exceeded.

Time limit exceeded! Please take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because a time limit of 180 seconds for parking was exceeded.

Park Assist cancelled! System error

The parking procedure is not possible because a fault exists on the vehicle. Have the fault rectified by a specialist workshop.

Park Assist defective! Service now!

The parking procedure is not possible because a fault exists on the park assist. Have the fault rectified by a specialist workshop.

Steering intervention! Check area around veh.!

The park assist is active and takes over the steering movements. Observe the surroundings and carefully drive backwards, at the same time operate the pedal.

Please take over steering! Finish parking manually

Take over the steering. End the parking procedure without using the park assist.

Speed too high! Please take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended while the speed was exceeded.

Park Assist: ESP Intervention!

Intervention of the ESP system while searching for a suitable parking place.

ESP intervention! Please take over steering!

Parking procedure is ended through the intervention of the ESP system. ■

Cruise control system (CCS)*

Introduction

The cruise control system (CCS) maintains a constant speed, more than 30 km/h (20 mph), once it has been set, without you having to depress the accelerator pedal. This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine. The cruise control system makes it possible - particularly on long journeys - for you to rest your "accelerator foot".

WARNING

- **The cruise control system must not, for safety reasons, be used in dense traffic or on unfavourable road surfaces (such as icy roads, slippery roads or loose chippings) – risk of accident!**
- **In order to prevent unintentional use of the cruise control system, always switch off the system after use.**

Note

- Models fitted with a manual gearbox: Always depress the clutch pedal if you switch on the cruise control system when the gearbox is in Neutral. Otherwise the engine can rev up unintentionally.
- The cruise control system is not able to maintain a constant speed when driving on steep downhill sections. The weight of the vehicle increases the speed at which it travels. One should shift down in good time to a lower gear or slow the vehicle down by applying the foot brake.
- It is not possible on vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox to switch on the cruise control system if the selector lever is in the position **P**, **N** or **R**. ■

Storing a speed

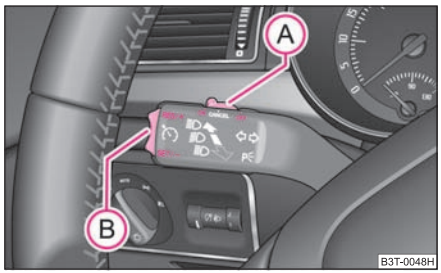

Fig. 131 Operating lever: Rocker button and switch of cruise control system

The cruise control system is operated by means of the switch (A) and rocker button (B) in the left lever of the multi-functional switch.

– Press the switch (A) ⇒ fig. 131 into the position **ON**.

– After the desired speed has been reached, press the rocker button (B) into the **SET** position.

After you have released the rocker button (B) out of the position **SET**, the speed you have just stored is maintained at a constant speed without having to depress the accelerator.

You can **increase** the speed by depressing the accelerator. Releasing the accelerator will cause the speed to **drop** again to the set speed.

This does not apply, however, if you drive at a speed which is more than 10 km/h higher than the set speed for a period of longer than 5 minutes. The stored speed will be cancelled in the memory. You then have to re-store the desired speed.

One can **reduce** the speed in the usual manner. The system is switched off temporarily by actuating the brake or clutch pedal ⇒ page 122.

WARNING

First ensure that it is not too high for the traffic conditions which exist at that moment before resuming the stored speed. ■

Changing a stored speed

You can also change the speed of the vehicle without depressing the accelerator.

Faster

– You can **increase** the stored speed without depressing the accelerator, by pressing the rocker button (B) ⇒ fig. 131 into the **RES** position.

– The speed of the car will increase continuously if you hold the rocker button pressed in the **RES** position. Once the car has reached the desired speed, release the rocker button. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

Slower

– You can **decrease** the stored speed by pressing the rocker button (B) in the **SET** position.

- Holding down the rocker button pressed in the **SET** position will cause the speed of the vehicle to reduce continuously. Once the car has reached the desired speed, release the rocker button. The set speed is then stored in the memory.
- If you release the rocker button when the car is travelling at a speed of less than 30 km/h, the speed is not stored, the memory is erased. It is then necessary to again store the speed with the rocker button (B) in the position **SET** after an increase in speed of the vehicle to more than 30 km/hour. ■

Switching off the cruise control system temporarily

- You can **switch off** the cruise control system temporarily by **depressing** the brake pedal or clutch pedal, on models with automatic gearbox and only with brake pedal.
- You can switch off temporarily the cruise control system, if you press the switch (A) in the middle position.

The set speed remains stored in the memory.

The **Resumption** of the stored speed is achieved by releasing the brake or clutch pedal, on vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox only after releasing the brake pedal and after shortly pressing the rocker button (B) ⇒ page 121, fig. 131 into the position **RES**.

⚠ WARNING

First ensure that it is not too high for the traffic conditions which exist at that moment before resuming the stored speed. ■

Switching off the cruise control system completely

- Press the switch (A) ⇒ page 121, fig. 131 to the right into position **OFF**. ■

Automatic gearbox DSG*

Automatic gearbox DSG*

Introduction

Your car is equipped with an automatic gearbox DSG. The abbreviation DSG means Direct shift gearbox (Direct shift gearbox).

Two independent clutches are needed for the power transmission between the engine and the gearbox. These replace the torque converter of the conventional automatic gearbox. Their shifting is matched in such a way that there are no jerks when shifting the gear and the power transmission of the engine to the front wheels is not interrupted. ■

Information for driving with the automatic gearbox DSG

Shifting up and down through the gears is performed automatically.

You can also, however, switch the gearbox over into the **Tiptronic mode**. This mode makes it possible for you to also shift gears manually ⇒ page 126.

Starting-off and Driving

- Depress the brake pedal and hold it depressed.
- Press the Shiftlock button (button in handle of the selector lever), move the selector lever into the desired position, e.g. **D** ⇒ page 124, and then release the Shiftlock button.
- Release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator ⇒ ⚠.

Stopping for a short time

- The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping just for a short time, such as at a cross roads. It is sufficient to hold the vehicle stationary using the foot brake. The engine can, however, be allowed just to idle.

Parking

- Depress the brake pedal and hold it depressed.
- Apply the handbrake firmly.
- Press and Shiftlock button in the selector lever, move the selector lever to **P** and then release the Shiftlock button.

The engine can only be **started** when the selector lever is in position **P** or **N** ⇒ page 112. At temperatures below -10 °C the engine can only be started in the selector lever position **P**.

It is sufficient to engage selector lever position **P** when parking on a flat surface. When parking on a slope you should first apply the handbrake firmly and then move the selector lever into position **P**. This is to ensure that there is no excessive pressure acting on the lock mechanism and that it is easier to subsequently move the selector lever out of position **P**.

If the selector lever position **N** is selected by accident while driving it is first necessary to release pressure on the accelerator pedal and wait for idling speed of the engine to be reached before engaging a drive position in the selector lever.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not depress the accelerator when changing the position of the selector lever if the car is stationary and the engine is running – risk of accident!**
- **Never move the selector lever into position R or P when driving – risk of an accident!**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **If you are stopping at a hill (downhill section), never try to hold the car stationary with the gear engaged by means of the "accelerator", this means by letting the clutch slip. This can lead to overheating of the clutch. If there is a risk of overheating of the clutch due to overload, the clutch is opened automatically and the vehicle rolls backward – risk of accident!**
- **If you must stop at a slope, depress and hold the brake pedal, so that you can prevent the vehicle from rolling back.**

Caution

- The double clutch on the automatic gearbox DSG is equipped with an overload protection. If you make use of the uphill function on a vehicle which is stationary or driving slowly uphill, it will result in an increase of thermal stress of the clutches.
- An overheating of the clutches can be detected by the flashing of the selector level indicator and the "jerk" of the clutches, finally the clutches are opened. The power transmission from the engine to the front wheels is interrupted and as a result of this the vehicle can no longer be driven. If the clutch opens automatically, depress the brake pedal, wait a few seconds and only then continue driving. ■

Selector lever positions

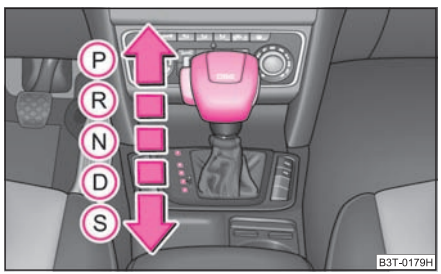

Fig. 132 Selector lever

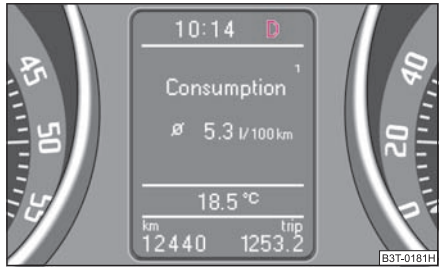

Fig. 133 Information display: Selector lever positions

The current selector lever position is indicated in the information display of the instrument cluster ⇒ fig. 133.

P – Parklock

The driven wheels are locked mechanically in this position.

The Parklock must only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary ⇒ ⚠.

If you wish to move the selector lever into or out of this position, you must press the Shiftlock button in the handle of the selector lever and at the same time depress the brake pedal.

If the battery is used, the selector lever cannot be moved out of the position **P**.

R – Reverse

Reverse gear must only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine idling ⇒ ⚠.

The brake pedal must be depressed and at the same time the Shiftlock must be pressed, if you wish to obtain the selector lever positions **R**, **P** or **N**.

When the ignition is switched on and the selector lever is in position **R**, the reverse lights will come on.

N – Neutral

The transmission is in Neutral in this position.

The brake pedal must be depressed (if the lever is in its position for longer than 2 seconds) in order to move the selector lever out of the position **N** into the position ▶

D, with the ignition switched on, on a vehicle travelling at less than 5 km/hour or on a stationary vehicle.

The brake pedal must be depressed (if the lever is in its position for longer than 2 seconds) in order to move the selector lever out of the position **N** into the position **R**, with the ignition switched on, on a vehicle travelling at less than 5 km/hour or on a stationary vehicle.

D – Drive, position for driving forward

When the selector lever is in this position, the forward gears are shifted up and down automatically in line with engine load, vehicle speed and the dynamic shift programme.

You must depress the brake pedal if you wise to move into position **D** from **N** when the vehicle is travelling at less than 5 km/hour or is stationary ⇒ ⚠.

In certain circumstances (e.g. when driving in mountainous regions or when towing a trailer) it may be beneficial to select the manual shift programme for a short time in order to adapt the gearbox ratios manually to the driving situations.

S – Position for sporty style of driving

Shifting up later into a higher gear makes it possible to fully exploit the power potential of the engine. The gearbox also then shifts down at higher engine speeds as in the position **D**.

The Shiftlock on the selector lever grip must be pressed when moving the selector lever out of the position **D** into the position **S**.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never move the selector lever into position R or P when driving – risk of an accident!**
- **When the engine is running and the vehicle is stationary, it is necessary to hold the car with the brake pedal in all the positions of the selector lever (except P and N) since the power transmission is never completely interrupted, also not when the engine is idling – the vehicle "creeps".**
- **You must on no account unintentionally operate the throttle (e.g. by hand from the engine compartment) if a drive position is engaged when the car is stationary. The vehicle would otherwise immediately start off – also when the handbrake is firmly applied – risk of an accident!**
- **You must move the selector lever into position P and firmly apply the handbrake first before you or any other person opens the bonnet and starts working on the engine when it is running – risk of accident! Pay particular attention to the warning instructions.** ■

Selector lever lock

Automatic selector lever lock

With the ignition on, the selector lever is locked when it is in the positions **P** and **N**. You must first of all depress the brake pedal in order to move the selector lever out of this position. The warning light ⇒ page 26 lights up in the instrument cluster as a reminder for the driver when the selector lever is in position **P** and **N**:

A time delay element ensures that the selector lever is not blocked when rapidly switching over the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D**). This does, for example, allow one to seesaw out a stuck vehicle. The selector lever lock will click into place if the lever is in the **N** position for more than 2 seconds without the brake pedal being pressed.

The selector lever lock is only active if the vehicle is stationary or moving at speed of less than 5 km/hour. The lock is switched off automatically into position **N** when the car is travelling at a higher speed.

Shiftlock button

The Shiftlock button in the handle of selector lever prevents certain selector lever positions being engaged inadvertently. The selector lever lock is cancelled when you press the Shiftlock button.

Keylock – Ignition key withdrawal lock

You can only withdraw the ignition key after switching off the ignition if the selector lever is in position **P**. If the ignition key is withdrawn, the selector lever is blocked in position **P**. ■

Kickdown function

The kickdown function provides you with maximum acceleration power.

Depressing the accelerator pedal allows the kickdown function to be activated in the desired driving program. This function has precedence over the driving programme and serves for maximum acceleration of the vehicle when exploiting the maximum power potential of the engine without taking into account the current selector lever position (**D**, **S** or **Tiptronic**). The gearbox shifts down to one or several gears in line with the driving state and the vehicle accelerates. The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.

WARNING

Please note that using the kickdown function can result in the driven wheels spinning on a smooth or slippery road surface – risk of skidding! ■

Dynamic shift programme

The automatic gearbox of your vehicle is controlled electronically. Shifting up and down through the gears is performed automatically on the basis of pre-defined driving programmes.

Adopting a **moderate style of driving** will cause the gearbox to select the most economical driving programme. Shifting up into a higher gear as soon as possible and shifting down as late as possible will have a favourable effect on your fuel consumption.

Adopting a **sporty style of driving** with rapid movements of the accelerator pedal combined with sharp acceleration and frequent changes in speed, exploiting the top speed of the car or depressing the accelerator pedal (kickdown function), will cause the gearbox to switch over to this style of driving and shift down earlier with frequent changes in gears in comparison to the moderate style of driving.

Selecting the most appropriate driving programme for the particular style of driving is a continuous process. Irrespective of this it is, however, possible to switch or shift down into a dynamic shift programme by depressing the accelerator rapidly. The gearbox shifts down into a lower gear matching the speed of the car and this allows you to accelerate rapidly (e.g. when overtaking) without having to depress the accelerator pedal fully into the kickdown range. The original programme will be reactivated to match your particular style of driving once the gearbox has shifted up again.

When driving in hilly regions, the gears are selected to match uphill and downhill sections. This avoids the gearbox frequently shifting up and down when negotiating an uphill stretch. When driving downhill, it is possible to shift down into the Tiptronic position, in order to exploit the engine brake torque. ■

Tiptronic

The Tiptronic allows the driver to also shift gears manually.

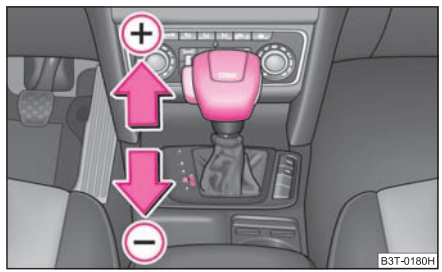

Fig. 134 Selector lever: Manual shifting of gears

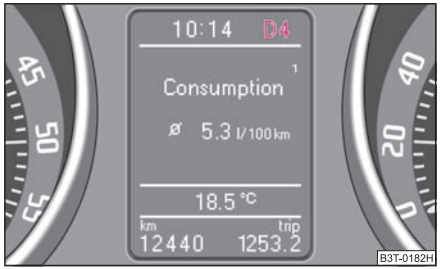

Fig. 135 Information display: Manual shifting of gears

The selector lever position you have engaged is indicated in the information display of the instrument cluster together with the engaged gear ⇒ fig. 135.

Switching over to manual shifting

– Push the selector lever to the right out of position **D**. After switching over, the current engaged gear is indicated in the display.

Shifting up gears

– One-touch forward of the selector lever (in the Tiptronic position) ⇒ page 126, fig. 134 (+).

Shifting down gears

– One-touch back of the selector lever (in the Tiptronic position) (-).

It is possible to switch over to manual both when the car is stationary and also when driving.

When you accelerate, the gearbox shifts up automatically into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.

If you select a lower gear, the automatic gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

If you operate the kickdown function, the gearbox shifts into a lower gear in line with the vehicle speed and engine speed. ■

Manual shifting on the multifunction steering wheel*

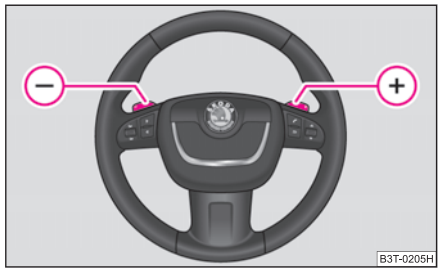

Fig. 136 Multifunction steering wheel: Manual shifting of gears

Switching over to manual shifting

– Push the selector lever to the right out of position **D**. After switching over, the current engaged gear is indicated in the display.

Shifting up gears

– Press the right rocker switch (+) ⇒ fig. 136 for the multifunction steering wheel.

Shifting down gears

– Press the left rocker switch (+) ⇒ fig. 136 for the multifunction steering wheel.

Temporarily switching over to manual shifting

– If the selector lever is in position **D** or **S**, press the left rocker switch (-) or the right rocker switch (+) for the multifunction steering wheel. ▶

– If the rocker switches (-) or (+) are not pressed for some time, the manual shifting switches off. You can also switch off the temporary switch over to manual shifting by pressing the right rocker switch (+) for more than 1 second. ■

Emergency programme

An emergency programme exists in the event of a fault in the system.

The gearbox operates in a corresponding emergency programme if there are functional faults in the gearbox electronics. This is indicated by all of the segments in the display lighting up or going out.

A functional fault can have the following effect:

- The gearbox only shifts into certain gears.
- The reverse gear **R** cannot be used.
- The manual shift programme (Tiptronic) is switched off in the emergency mode.

If the gearbox has switched over to emergency mode, drive to the nearest specialist garage in order to have the fault rectified. ■

Selector lever-emergency unlocking (DSG)

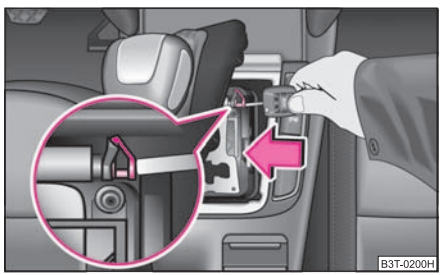

Fig. 137 Selector lever-emergency unlocking

In case of interruption of the power supply (e.g. flat vehicle battery, defective fuse) or defect of the selector lever lock, the selector lever can no longer be shifted from the position **P** in the normal way and the vehicle can no longer be moved. The selector lever must be unlocked in case of emergency.

– Apply the handbrake firmly.

– Carefully pull up the front left and right cover.

– Pull up rear cover.

– Press with a narrow object (e.g. ignition key) the yellow plastic hoop ⇒ fig. 137 to the left.

– Simultaneously press the shiftlock button in the handle of the selector lever in the position **N**[11].

Tow-starting and towing vehicle

Tow-starting a vehicle

It is not possible to tow-start vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox ⇒ page 237.

You can use jump-start cables connected to the battery of another vehicle for starting your car if the vehicle battery is flat ⇒ page 236.

Towing a vehicle

Please pay attention to the following information if it comes necessary to tow-in your car ⇒ page 237. ■

[11] If the selector lever is moved again into the position **P**, it is once again blocked.

Communication

Multifunction steering wheel*

Operate radio und navigation on the multifunction steering wheel

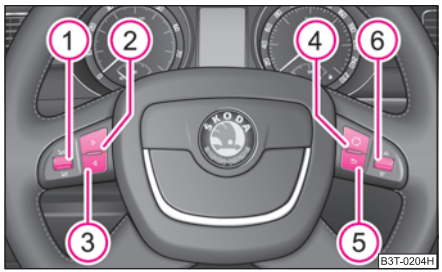

Fig. 138 Multifunction steering wheel: control buttons

The driver can set the basic functions of the radio and navigation by simply operating the buttons located on the steering wheel so that he can concentrate on the traffic situation without being distracted as little as possible by operating the radio and navigation ⇒ fig. 138.

This applies only if your vehicle has been installed with radio and navigation at the factory. You can of course operate the radio and navigation at the appliance. You will find a description in the operating instructions of your radio system.

When the headlights are switched on, the steering wheel pushbuttons are then also illuminated.

The buttons apply for the respective operating mode of the current radio or navigation.

By pressing the buttons, you can carry out the following functions:

Button	Action	Radio, traffic information	CD	The CD changer / MP3	Navigation
1	press briefly	Switch off/on tone			
1	press button for long time	switch off/on*			
1	+ turn upwards	Increase volume			
1	− turn downwards	Decrease volume			
2	▷ press briefly	Changing to the next stored radio station Changing to the next stored traffic information Interrupting the traffic report	Changing to the next title		
2	▷ press button for long time	Interruption of the traffic report	Fast forward		
3	◁ press briefly	Changing to the previously stored radio station Changing to the previously stored traffic information Interrupting the traffic report	Changing to the previous title		
3	◁ press button for long time	Interruption of the traffic report	Fast rewind		
4		Changing between the audio sources			
5	⮌ press briefly	Calling up the main menu			
5	⮌ press button for long time				
6	press briefly	Interruption of the traffic report	Without function		
6	press button for long time				
6	△ turn upwards	Display of the station list scroll upwards Interruption of the traffic reports	Changing to the previous title	Without function	
6	▽ turn downwards	Display of the station list scroll downwards Interruption of the traffic report	Changing to the next title		

Universal telephone preinstallation GSM II*

Inserting the mobile phone and adapter

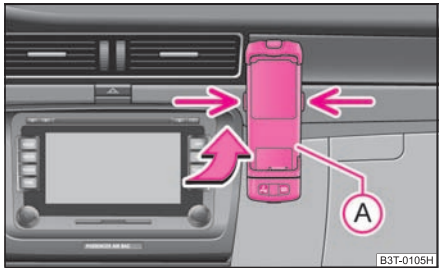

Fig. 139 Universal preparation for the mobile phone

Only one telephone mount is factory-fitted. An adapter for the mobile phone can be purchased from Škoda original accessories.

Inserting the mobile phone and adapter

- First of all push the adapter (A) in the direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 139 up to the stop into the mount. Press the adapter slightly downwards, until it locks securely into position.
- Insert the mobile phone into the adapter (A) (as specified in manufacturer's instructions).

Removing the mobile phone and adapter

- Press simultaneouly the side locks of the mount and remove the mobile phone and adapter ⇒ fig. 139.

This enables you to make full use of the advantages of a normal carphone ("hands-free system - Hands Free" using a microphone integrated in the vehicle, optimal transmission of signals using an external aerial, operating via two buttons on the adapter etc.).

The communication between the telephone and the handsfree system of your vehicle is established via Bluetooth®, the telephone mount serves only for charging the telephone. ■

Bluetooth®

The Bluetooth® technology serves as cableless connection of a mobile phone and multimedia unit, which are equipped with this technology, to the hands-free system of your vehicle.

In order to connect a mobile phone or multimedia unit with Bluetooth® to the hands-free system, it is necessary to adapt the phone or multimedia unit and the hands-free system to each other. Detailed information on this is provided in the operating instructions of your mobile phone or multimedia unit. The following steps must be carried out for the connection:

- Switch on the ignition.
- Select the menu on the mobile phone or multimedia unit by finding further setups which can be connected via Bluetooth®.
- If the hands-free system on the display of the mobile phone or multimedia unit announces **SKODA_BT**, enter the PIN **1234** within 30 seconds and wait, until the connection is established.[12)]
- If you want to connect a multimedia unit of which the PIN cannot be changed (differing from **1234**), do not hesitate to contact your Škoda Service Partner.

The connection of the mobile phone or multimedia unit and the hands-free system is only possible 5 minutes after switching on the ignition and up to a speed of 6 km/h. When exceeding these conditions, the connection can be repeated by continuous pressing of the button PTT (button push to talk) and the button **SOS** ▶

12) Some mobile phones have a menu, in which the authorization for establishing a Bluetooth® connection is performed via the input of a code. If the input for the authorization is necessary, it must always be performed when re-establishing the Bluetooth connection.

on the adapter with an interval of 2 seconds or pressing the button twice on the multifunction steering wheel* with an interval of 2 seconds.

While connecting the mobile phone with the hands-free system by means of Bluetooth®, no other phone can be connected with the hands-free system via Bluetooth®.

Up to seven mobile phones and four multimedia units can be connected by the hands-free system via Bluetooth® whereby only one mobile phone or multimedia unit can communicate simultaniously via Bluetooth® with the hands-free system. If an eighth mobile phone is connected to the handsfree-system, then the telephone, which has not been used together with the handsfree system for the longest period, is disconnected by means of Bluetooth®.

Establish Bluetooth® connection

After switching on the ignition, the Bluetooth connection is automatically established for the already adapted mobile phone [12]. Check on the mobile unit if the automatic connection was established.

Disconnect Bluetooth® connection

After withdrawing the ignition key, the Bluetooth® connection is disonnected.

WARNING

- **Pay attention primarily to the traffic situation! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety. Use the telephone system only to such an extent, so that you are in full control of your vehicle at any time – risk of accident!**
- **In the event of air transport, the Bluetooth® function of the handsfree-system must be switched off by a specialist garage!**

Caution

Taking the mobile phone out of the adapter during the call can lead to interruption of the connection. When taking out the mobile phone, the connection to the factory-fitted antenna is interrupted, this reduces the quality of the transmitting and receiving signal. This might result additionally in harmful radiation from the mobile phone in the interior of the vehicle and the charging of the telephone battery is interrupted.

Note

- Not valid for all mobile phones which enable a communication via Bluetooth®.
- Please operate your mobile phone exclusively with a suitable adapter, in order to keep a low radiation in the vehicle.
- Inserting the mobile phone into the adapter ensures an optimal sending and receiving power and offers at the same time the advantage of the battery charging.
- Note that the range of the Bluetooth® connection to the handsfree-system is limited to the vehicle interior. The range is dependent on local factors, e.g. obstacles between the devices and interferences with other devices. If your mobile phone is e.g. in a jacket pocket, this can lead to difficulties when establishing the Bluetooth® connection with the handsfree-system or the data transfer. ■

Erase the list of connected units

Erase previously connected mobile or multimedia units

– Switch on the ignition. A connection to a mobile or multimedia unit must not be established.

– Press the button SOS on the adapter or the button on the multifunction steering wheel* for more than 10 seconds.

– Erasing is confirmed with an audible signal. ■

Operating telephone calls with the aid of the telephone mount

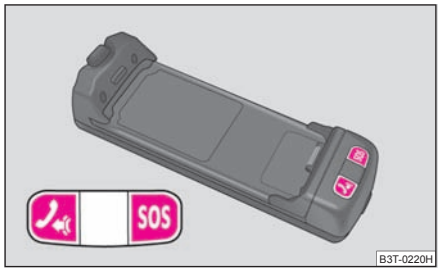

Fig. 140 Button for switching on the voice control

The contol unit reacts to pressing the button PTT and SOS ⇒ fig. 140 as follows:

- PTT - press briefly: see table,
- PTT - press for long time: no reaction,
- SOS - press briefly: no reaction,
- SOS - press for long time: terminates all operations and starts to dial the emergency number (112).

Pressing for a long time means longer than 2 seconds.

Overview of the reactions of the handsfree-system while briefly pressing the button PTT

Initial condition	Reaction
Telephone connected, idle state	Voice control of the mobile phone is activated
Telephone connected, voice control active	Voice control is deactivated
Incoming call	Call is accepted
Active call	Call is terminated
Connection is established	The process for connecting is terminated
Call on hold	Call on hold is activated
Call on hold + active call	Active call is terminated and call on hold is activated
Active call and second incoming call	Active call is held, incoming call is accepted
Call on hold + process for connecting	Process for connecting is terminated, call on hold is kept on hold
Call on hold + incoming call	Call on hold is kept on hold, incoming call is accepted
Active call + call on hold + incoming call	Active call is terminated, call on hold is activated, incoming call remains an incoming call

Operate telephone call on the multifunction steering wheel

Fig. 141 Multifunction steering wheel: control buttons

The contol unit reacts to pressing the button PTT ⇒ fig. 141 as follows:

- press briefly: see table,
- press button for long time: reject incoming call; in the other modes, changing between private modus (call via telephone) and the hands-free modus.

Pressing for a long time means longer than 2 seconds.

Initial condition	Reaction
Telephone connected, idle state.	Voice control of the mobile phone is activated[a)]
Telephone connected, voice control active	Voice control is deactivated
Incoming call	Call is accepted
Active call	Call is terminated
Connection is established	The process for connecting is terminated
Call on hold	Call on hold is activated
Call on hold + active call	Active call is terminated and call on hold is activated
Active call and second incoming call	Active call is held, incoming call is accepted
Call on hold + process for connecting	Process for connecting is terminated, call on hold is kept on hold
Call on hold + incoming call	Call on hold is kept on hold, incoming call is accepted
Active call + call on hold + incoming call	Active call is terminated, call on hold is activated, incoming call remains an incoming call

a) The voice control is only activated if your mobile phone is equipped with this function.

Universal telephone preinstallation GSM III*

Introduction

This enables you to make full use of the advantages of a normal carphone ("hands-free system" using a microphone integrated in the vehicle, optimal transmission of signals using an external aerial etc.). The equipment includes also the voice control. The telephone is connected using the **rSAP** profile - **Remote SIM access profile (telecommunication of the SIM data)** by means of Bluetooth® technology, if your telephone supports this profile. The equipment includes the following functions:

- Display of the SMS text in the information display.
- Free talking in the vehicle interior.
- MUTE signal to the radio.
- Voice control (with the set-up possibility for "short and long dialogue", depending on the user's knowledge of the operating structure).
- Convenience mode with the multifunction steering wheel and the display in the information display.
- Handsfree-system.

The voice control of the telephone is activated by pressing the button PTT on the multifunction steering wheel ⇒ page 139, fig. 142.

A phone phonebook is part of the universal telephone preinstallation GSM III with voice control. In the phone phonebook there are 1 000 free memory locations available. This phone phonebook is independent of the appliance used for the mobile phone.

Furthermore the volume can be changed individually at any time with the button for setting the radio or on vehicles fitted with multifunction steering wheel* with function buttons on the steering wheel.

Dialogue

The period, in which the telephone system is ready to receive voice commands and carry out the voice commands, is called DIALOGUE. The system gives audible feed-back and guides you if necessary through the relevant functions. You can start or end the dialogue at any time by pressing the PTT button.

The dialogue is always automatically ended after carrying out an operation, e.g. after erasing the name from the phonebook.

The dialogue of the incoming call is immediately interrupted and you can accept the call by pressing the button ✆.

If a voice command is not detected, the system answers with "**Sorry?**" and a new entry can be performed. After the 2nd error the system repeats the aid. After the 3rd error the answer "**Cancel**" is given and the dialogue is ended.

Optimum understanding of the voice commands depends on the following factors:

- Speak with a normal tone of voice without intonation and excessive voice pauses.
- Avoid insufficient articulation.
- Close the doors, windows and sliding roof, in order to reduce or stop disturbing exterior noise.
- It is recommended to speak louder at higher speeds, so that the tone of your voice is louder than the increased surrounding noise.
- During the dialogue avoid additional noise in the vehicle, e.g. simultaneously talking occupants.
- Do not speak, if the system makes an announcement.
- The microphone for voice control is inserted in the moulded headliner and directed to the driver and front passenger. Therefore the driver and the front passenger can operate the equipment.

WARNING

Pay attention primarily to the traffic situation! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety. Use the telephone system only to such an extent, so that you are in full control of your vehicle at any time.

Note

- Please contact your Škoda Service Partner if there are any points which are not clear.
- Please also refer to the additional instructions ⇒ page 145. ■

Bluetooth®

The equipment enables the wireless connection to the control unit of a telephone with Bluetooth® function which supports the **rSAP** profile.

Process of connection

- Switch on the ignition.
- If you have not switched on Bluetooth® on your telephone, switch it on.
- For certain mobile phones it is necessary to switch on first the **rSAP** function.
- Press the button ✆ on the multifunction steering wheel and select **device search**. The system searches mobile devices and shows these in the information display*.
- Select your telephone in the information display by turning the handwheel and select it by pressing the handwheel.
- Within 30 seconds enter in your telephone the 30 digit PIN of your control unit, which is indicated in your information display* and confirm it according to the instructions on the display of your telephone.
- If your SIM card is blocked by a PIN code, enter the PIN of the SIM card of your telephone. The telephone connects to the control unit (during the first connection you can only select in the information display* and when the vehicle is stationary, if the PIN should be stored).
- For the first storage of a new user follow the instructions in the information display.
- To download the telephone book and the indentification data of the SIM card into the new control unit, confirm again the command **rSAP** in your mobile phone. The system reads the telephone book.

If you do not want to confirm the command **rSAP** during each connection of the telephone to the control unit, then you must carry out in the menu of the mobile phone an authorization using the control unit.

The telephone deregisters from the GSM network and only the control unit ensures the communication with the network. In the telephone only the interface for Bluetooth® remains active. In this case, you can only select to separate from the device, switch off the Bluetooth® connection or the number of the emergency call 112.

If the PIN was stored, an automatic selection and connection of the telephone take place the next time the ignition is switched. Check on your mobile phone if the automatic connection was established.

Connection terminated

The connection of the handsfree-system is terminated by means of Bluetooth®:

- When removing the key from the ignition lock (during a telephone call, the connection is disconnected).
- By switching off the Bluetooth® in the mobile phone.
- By selecting “separate telephone” in the menu of the mobile phone.

On vehicles which are fitted out with radio or navigation at the factory, it is possible to terminate the telephone call after removing the key from the ignition lock by pressing the icon on the touch-screen of the radio [13] or the navigation, see operating instructions for radio or for navigation.

⚠ WARNING

- **Pay attention primarily to the traffic situation! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety. Use the telephone system only to such an extent, so that you are in full control of your vehicle at any time – risk of accident!**
- **In the event of air transport, the Bluetooth® function of the handsfree-system must be switched off by a specialist garage!**

[13] Does not apply for Radio Swing.

Note

In the memory of the control unit, up to three users can be stored, whereby the handsfree-system can only communicate actively with one user. In the case of mutual connection with a fourth mobile phone, you must erase one user.

- If the telephone book of the mobile phone contains more than 1 000 entries, the system announces a **failure while loading the telephone book**.
- When connecting to the control unit, follow the instructions on your mobile phone.
- Note that the range of the Bluetooth® connection to the handsfree-system is optimized in the vehicle interior. The range is dependent on local factors, e.g. obstacles between the devices and interferences with other devices. ■

Operation of the telephone on the multifunction steering wheel*

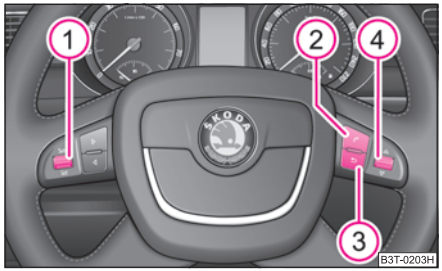

Fig. 142 Multifunction steering wheel: Control buttons for the telephone

The driver can set the basic functions of the telephone by simply operating the buttons located on the steering wheel so that he can concentrate on the traffic situation without being distracted as little as possible by operating the telephone ⇒ fig. 142.

This applies only if your vehicle has been equiped with the telephone preinstallation at the factory.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel are illuminated.

Overview of the different functions in contrast to the multifunction steering wheel without mobile phone operation ⇒ page 130.

Button	Action	Operation
①	press briefly	Activation and deactivation of the voice control (Button PTT - Push to talk)
①	press button for long time	
①	+ turn upwards	Increase volume
①	− turn downwards	Decrease volume
②	press briefly	Accept call, terminate call, entry in the main menu of the telephone, list of selected numbers
②	press button for long time	Reject call, list of the last calls, entry in the main menu of the telephone, list of selected numbers
③	press briefly	Reach one level higher in the menu (according to the current position in the menu)
③	press button for long time	Return in the main menu of the information display
④	press briefly	Confirm menu selection
④	press button for long time	
④	△ turn upwards	The last chosen menu selection, name
④	▽ turn downwards	The next menu selection, name
④	△ quickly turn upwards	To the previous initial letter in the telephone book
④	▽ quickly turn downwards	To the next initial letter in the telephone book

The buttons operate the functions for the operating mode of the current telephone. ■

Operate telephone in the information display*

Fig. 143 Information display: Menu telephone

If you select the menu point **Telephone** in the information display with the aid of the handwheel (4), you can select the following menu points:

- **Phone book**
- **Dial number**
- **Call register**
- **Voice mailbox**
- **Messages**
- **Bluetooth**
- **Settings**
- **Back**

Phone book

In the menu point **Phone book** is the list of the loaded contacts from the telephone memory and the SIM card of the mobile phone. In the phone phonebook there are 1 000 free memory locations available.

Dial number

In the menu point **Dial number**, you can write any telephone number. Select in sequence the desired digits with the aid of the handwheel and confirm it by pressing the handwheel. You can select the numbers **0 – 9**, the symbols ***, #** and the functions **Delete, Call, Cancel**.

Call register

In the menu point **Call register**, you can select the following menu points:

- **Missed calls**
- **Received calls**
- **Last calls**
- **Delete lists**

Voice mailbox

In the menu point **Voice mailbox** there is a list of messages from the missed calls.

Messages

In the menu point **Messages** there is a list of received text messages.

Bluetooth

In the menu **Bluetooth** you can select the following menu points:

- **User** - the overview of the stored users
- **New user** - Search for users who are in the reception range
- **Visibility** - Switching on the visibility of the telephone unit for other devices
- **Extras**
  - **Headset**
  - **Modem**
- **Phone name** - the possibility to change the name of the telephone unit (preset SKODA-rSAP)

Settings

In the menu **Settings** you can select the following menu points:

- **Phone book**
  - **Update**
  - **Select memory**
    - **SIM & phone (SIM & Mobile phone)**
    - **SIM card**
    - **Mobile phone**

- **List**
  - **Surname**
  - **First name**
- **Own no. send** - the possibility to suppress one's own number on the unit called
- **Signal settings**
  - **Ring tone**
  - **Volume**
- **Phone settings**
  - **Select operator**
    - **Automatic**
    - **Manual**
  - **Off time**
    - **+ 5 Minutes**
    - **– 5 Minutes**
- **GPRS** - Setting of the access point of the user
- **Switch off ph.** – switching off the telephone unit (telephone remains connected)

Back

Return in the main menu of the information display. ■

Voice commands

Voice commands for operating the telephone control unit

Voice command	Activity
HELP	After this command the system repeats all possible commands.
LONG DIALOGUE	Help is not reduced (suitable for beginners).
SHORT DIALOGUE	Help is clearly reduced (good operating knowledge provided).
CALL NAME	After this command a name can be entered which establishes a connection to the requested partner ⇒ page 144.
DIAL NUMBER	After this command a telephone number can be entered which establishes a connection to the requested partner ⇒ page 142.
REDIAL	After this command the system selects the last selected number ⇒ page 143.

Other possible commands

Voice command	Activity
CALLS (SELECT)	The telephone number is selected.
REPEAT	The entered name or the digits are repeated. Then the system requests with voice response "**please proceed**" the entry of further digits or commands.
BACK	The entered name or the last entered order of digits is erased. Previously entered groups of digits are repeated. Then the system requests with voice response "**and proceed?**" the entry of further digits or commands.
DELETE	All entered digits are erased.
CANCEL	The dialogue is ended.

Select number

– Press the button PTT ① ⇒ page 139, fig. 142.

– Give the command **DIAL NUMBER** after the signal tone.

After giving this command, the system requests the entry of a telephone number. The telephone number can be entered as an interconnected spoken row of digits ▶

(complete number), in the form of order of digits (separation through a brief voice pause) or through individually spoken digits. After each order of digits (separation through brief voice pause) the detected digits are repeated.

The digits **zero to nine** are permitted. The system detects no continuous digit combinations such as twenty-three, but only individually spoken digits (two, three).

You can enter the selected number in random digital blocks or as a whole number at once. We recommend to enter the selected number in digital blocks to each three digits.

If you enter more than 20 digits, the system announces: "**The number is too long**".

For an international call you can enter the symbol instead of the two zeros at the beginning of the selected number **Plus (+)**.

Example when entering a telephone number

Voice command	Announcement
DIAL NUMBER	"**The number please**"
e.g. **SIX ZERO THREE**	"**Six zero three**"
	"**And proceed?**"
e.g. **ONE TWO THREE FOUR**	"**One, two, three, four**"
	"**And proceed?**"
z. B. **FIVE SIX**	"**Five, six**"
CALLS (SELECT)	"**The number is being dialed**"
If no entry is put in, the following announcement is made after about 5 seconds.	
	"**Possible commands are: dial, repeat, back, or delete**"

You can interrupt the dialogue at any time by pressing the PTT button or with the voice command **CANCEL**. ■

Repeat last call

– Press the button PTT (1) ⇒ page 139, fig. 142.

– Give the command **REDIAL** after the signal tone.

After giving this command, the last number selected via voice input is selected again.

Example of redial

Voice command	Announcement
REDIAL	"**The number is being dialed**"

You can interrupt the dialogue at any time by pressing the PTT button or with the voice command **CANCEL**. ■

Phone voice phonebook*

Store name

– Press the button ✆.

– In the menu telephone, select the menu point **Phone book** and in this menu point, select a contact of which you want to record a voice recording and confirm with the handwheel (4).

– Select the menu point **Record** and afterwards **Recording**.

– The system gives the command "**Store name, name please**".

– Pronounce the name, e. g "Name XYZ", the system repeats the name.

– The system gives the notice "**Name stored**".

In the case that the system does not understand the spoken name, it gives the notice "**Pardon?**", "**Please repeat the name**", "**The name is too short**" or "**The name is too long**".

In the phone voice phonebook up to 15 entries can be stored.

For similar names additional information (e.g. first names) should be stored.

Voice commands for operating the phone voice phone book

Voice command	Activity
LISTEN TO ALL THE NAMES	After this command the control unit repeats all stored names.
DELETE NAME	After this command, you can enter a name which you would like to erase from the internal phone voice phonebook.
DELETE ALL NAMES	After this command, you can erase the complete list of the stored names.

Example for storing the recording in the phone voice phonebook

Voice command	Announcement
STORE NAME	**"The name please"**
Name XYZ	**"Please repeat the name"**
Name XYZ	**"The name XYZ is stored"**

You can interrupt the dialogue at any time by pressing the PTT button or with the voice command **CANCEL**. ■

Select name

– Press the button PTT (1) ⇒ page 139, fig. 142.

– Give the command **CALL NAME** after the signal tone.

After giving this command, the system requests the entry of the name to be called.

Example for the selection of a name

Voice command	Announcement
CALL NAME	**"Call name"**
Name XYZ	**"Do you want to call XYZ?"**
CALLS (SELECT)	**"The name is being dialed"**

In the case that the list is empty, the message "**The name list is empty.**" sounds.

If the system does not recognize the name called, it asks you to repeat using the command "**Pardon?**". If the system has not recognized the name to be called after repeating, the message sounds "**The name does not exist. You receive the curren name list with LISTEN TO ALL THE NAMES.**".

You can interrupt the dialogue at any time by pressing the PTT button or with the voice command **CANCEL**. ■

Listening-in to the voice phonebook

– Press the PTT button.

– Give the command **LISTEN TO ALL THE NAMES** after the signal tone.

After giving this command, all voice recordings are replayed from the list of the control unit. By pressing the PTT button when announcing the desired name, the corresponding telephone number is being dialed; the system answers: "**Call set-up**".

Example for the selection of a name

Voice command	Announcement
LISTEN TO ALL THE NAMES	**"Interrupt using the voice button"**

In the case that the list is empty, the system announces "**The name list is empty.**".

You can interrupt the dialogue at any time by pressing the PTT button or with the voice command **CANCEL**.

After replaying the complete list, the system announces "**End of name list**". ■

Erase entries out of the phone voice phonebook

– Press the PTT button.

– Give the command **ERASE NAME** after the signal tone.

After giving this command, there is the possibility to erase a stored entry in the phone voice phonebook.

Example for erasing an entry out of the phone voice phonebook

Voice command	Announcement
DELETE NAME	"The name please"
Name XYZ	"Do you want to erase XYZ?"
YES	"The name is deleted"

You can interrupt the dialogue at any time by pressing the PTT button or with the voice command **CANCEL**.

If the user answers with **NO**, the system answers with "**Cancel**" and the dialogue is ended. ■

Erase the complete phone voice phonebook

– Press the PTT button.

– Give the command **DELETE PHONEBOOK** after the signal tone.

After giving this command, there is the possibility to erase the complete phone voice phonebook.

Example for erasing the complete phone voice phonebook

Voice command	Announcement
DELETE ALL NAMES	"Do you want to delete all the names?"
YES	"Are you sure?"
YES	"All the names are deleted"

You can interrupt the dialogue at any time by pressing the PTT button or with the voice command **CANCEL**.

If the user answers with **NO**, the system answers with "**Cancel**" and the dialogue is ended. ■

Mobile phones and two-way radio systems

The installation of a mobile phone and two-way radio system in a vehicle should only be carried out by a Škoda Dealer.

Škoda Auto a.s. permits the operation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a professionally installed external aerial and a maximum transmission power of up to 10 watts.

Our specialist garage is also happy to inform you about the possibilities available for installing and operating mobile telephones and radio transmitters which have an output greater than 10 watts. The Škoda Service Partners can provide you with details about the technical possibilities for retrofitting of mobile telephones and radio transmitters.

Operation of mobile phones or two-way radio systems may interfere with functioning of the electronic systems of your vehicle. The reasons for this may be:

- no external aerial
- external aerial incorrectly installed
- transmission power greater than 10 watts.

You should also be aware of the fact that only an **external** aerial makes it possible to achieve the optimal range of such equipment. ▶

WARNING

- **If a mobile phone or two-way radio system is operated inside the vehicle without using an external aerial, or with an external aerial which has been incorrectly installed, the result can be excessive electromagnetic fields which may cause harm to your health.**
- **Please concentrate fully at all times on your driving!**
- **You must not install two-way radio systems, mobile phones or mounts on the covers of the airbags or within the immediate deployment range of airbags. This might result in injuries to the occupants in the event of an accident.**

Note

Please also refer to the operating instructions of the mobile phones and two-way radio systems. ■

Input AUX-IN

The input for external audio sources AUX-IN is located below the armrest of the front seat and is marked with **AUX** This input serves for connecting external audio sources (e.g. portable mp3 player) to the your radio system. The equipment AUX-IN can only be used in combination with a radio or navigation system installed in the factory. The description on how to operate AUX-IN can be found in the relevant operating instructions of the radio or the navigation system.

Note

- If an external audio source is connected via AUX-IN, which has a separate power supply, this can lead to an interference of the audio signals. It depends on the properties of the adapter.
- The loudspeakers in the vehicle are matched to a power output of 30 W. ■

CD changer*

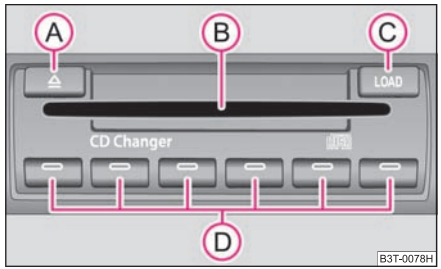

Fig. 144 The CD changer

The CD changer for the radio and navigation system is located in the right side compartment of the luggage compartment.

Loading a CD

– Touch the button (C) and guide the CD (compact disc) into the CD-case (B). The CD is automatically loaded onto the next free position in the CD-changer. The LED in the corresponding button (D) stops flashing.

Loading all CDs

– Hold the button (C) pressed and guide all CDs one after the other into the CD-case (B). The LEDs in the buttons (D) are no longer flashing.

Loading a CD to one definite position

– Touch button (C). The LEDs in the buttons (D) light up at the memory spaces, which are already assigned and flash in the case of free memory spaces.

– Touch the desired button (D) and guide the CD into the CD-case (B). ▶

Ejecting a CD

– Touch the button (A), in order to eject a CD. For assigned memory spaces, now the LEDs light up in the buttons (D).

– Touch the corresponding button (D). The CD is ejected.

Ejecting all CDs

– Hold the button (A) pressed for more than 2 seconds, in order to eject the CDs. All CDs in the CD-changer are ejected consecutively.

Note

- Always guide the CD into the CD-case (B) with the printed side pointing upwards.
- Never push the CD with force into the CD-case as the insertion is performed automatically.
- After loading a CD into the CD-changer, you must wait until the LED of the corresponding button (D) lights up. Then the CD-case (B) is free to load the next CD.
- If you have selected a position, on which a CD is already located, this CD will be ejected. Take out the ejected CD and load the desired CD. ■

Safety

Passive Safety

Basic information

Driving the safe way

Passive safety measures reduce the risk of injury in accident situations.

In this section you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety in your vehicle. We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, child seats and safety of children. It is therefore important, in particular, to comply with the notes and warnings in this section for your own interest and in the interest of those travelling with you.

⚠ WARNING

- **This chapter contains important information on how to use the vehicle for the driver and his occupants. You will find further information on safety, which concerns you and those travelling with you, in the following chapters of this Owner's Manual.**
- **The complete on-board literature should always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.** ■

Safety equipment

The safety equipment is part of the occupant protection and it can reduce the risk of injuries in accident situations.

"Do not put at risk" your safety and the safety of those travelling with you . In the event of an accident, the safety equipment can reduce the risk of injuries. The following list contains part of the safety equipment in your vehicle:

- Three-point seat belts for all the seats,
- belt force limiter for front and outer rear seats*,
- belt tensioner for front and outer rear seats*,
- seat belt height adjuster for front seats,
- front airbag for the driver and front passenger,
- Driver's knee airbag*,
- front side airbags,
- rear side airbags*,
- head airbags*,
- anchoring points for child seat using the "ISOFIX" system,
- anchoring points for child seat using the "Top Tether" system,
- head restraint adjustable for height,
- adjustable steering column.

The specified safety equipment works together, in order to optimally protect you and those travelling with you in accident situations. The safety equipment does not protect you or the people travelling with you, if you or your occupants adopt an incorrect seated position or the equipment is not correctly adjusted or used.

For this reason you will be provided with information on why this equipment is very important, how it protects you and the occupants, what should be observed when using the equipment and how you and the people travelling with you can make full use of the existing safety equipment. This Owner's Manual contains important warning notes, which you and those travelling with you should pay attention to in order to reduce a risk of injury.

Safety concerns everybody! ■

Before setting off

The driver is always fully responsible for his occupants and for the operating safety of the vehicle.

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

- Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
- Inspect the tyre inflation pressure.
- Ensure that all the windows offer a good visibility to the outside.
- Safely attach the items of luggage ⇒ page 78, “Loading the luggage compartment”.
- Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedal.
- Adjust the mirror, the front seat and the head restraint to match your body size.
- Point out to your occupants that the head restraints must be adjusted to match their body size.
- Protect the children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts ⇒ page 171, “Transporting children safely”.
- Adopt the correct seated position ⇒ page 150, “Correct seated position”. Also inform your occupants to adopt the correct seated position.
- Fasten the seat belt correctly. Also inform your occupants to properly fasten the seat belts ⇒ page 156, “How are seat belts correctly fastened?”. ■

What influences the driving safety?

The driving safety is primarily determined by the style of driving and the personal behaviour of all the occupants.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and his occupants. If your driving safety is effected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk. Please refer to the following guidelines.

- Do not get distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, e.g. by your occupants or mobile phone calls.
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, e.g. through medication, alcohol, drugs.
- Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- Adjust the driving speed at all times to the road condition as well as to the traffic and weather conditions.
- Take regular breaks on long journeys - at the latest every two hours. ■

Correct seated position

Correct seated position for the driver

Correct seated position for the driver is important for safe and relaxed driving.

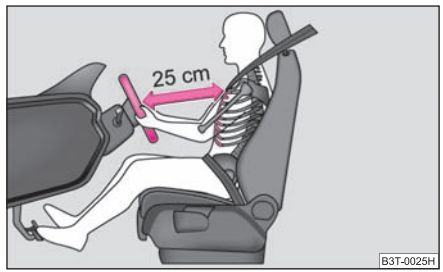

Fig. 145 The correct distance of the driver from the steering wheel

Fig. 146 The correct head restraint adjustment for the driver

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting.

- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm ⇒ page 150, fig. 145.
- Position the driver seat in the forward/back direction so that you are able to press the pedals with your legs at a slight angle .
- Adjust the backrest so that you are able to reach the highest point of the steering wheel with your arms at a slight angle.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head ⇒ fig. 146.
- Fasten the seat belt correctly ⇒ page 156, “How are seat belts correctly fastened?”.

Manual driver seat adjustment ⇒ page 71, “Adjusting the front seats”.

Electrical driver seat adjustment ⇒ page 72, “Adjusting front seats electrically*”.

WARNING

- **The front seats and the head restraints must always be adjusted to match the body size of the seat occupant as well as the seat belts must always be correctly fastened in order to provide an optimal protection for you and your occupants.**

WARNING (continued)

- **The driver must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel ⇒ page 150, fig. 145. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!**
- **When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel firmly in the 12 o'clock position or in another way (e.g. in the middle of the steering wheel or at the inner steering wheel edge). In such cases, injuries to the arms, the hands and the head can occur when the driver airbag is deployed.**
- **The backrests must not be angled too far back when driving otherwise this will affect proper operation of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!**
- **Ensure that there are no objects in the footwell as any objects may get behind the pedals during a driving or braking manoeuvre. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, to brake or accelerate.** ■

Correct seated position for the front passenger

The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety when an airbag is deployed.

For the safety of the front passenger and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting.

- Adjust the front passenger seat as far as possible to the rear.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head ⇒ fig. 146.
- Fasten the seat belt correctly ⇒ page 156, “How are seat belts correctly fastened?”.

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated ⇒ page 168, “Deactivating an airbag”.

Manual front passenger adjustment ⇒ page 71, “Adjusting the front seats”.

Electrical front passenger seat adjustment ⇒ page 72, “Adjusting front seats electrically*”.

WARNING

- **The front seats and the head restraints must always be adjusted to match the body size of the seat occupant as well as the seat belts must always be correctly fastened in order to provide an optimal protection for you and your occupants.**
- **The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!**
- **Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!**
- **The backrests must not be angled too far back when driving otherwise this will affect proper operation of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!** ■

Correct seated position for the occupants on the rear seats

Occupants on the rear seats must sit upright, keep the feet in the footwell and must have their seat belts correctly fastened.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.

- Adjust the head restraints so that the top edge of the head restraints are at the same level as the upper part of your head ⇒ page 151, fig. 146.
- Fasten the seat belt correctly ⇒ page 156, “How are seat belts correctly fastened?”.
- If you are transporting ⇒ page 171, “Transporting children safely” children in the vehicle, please use a suitable child restraint system.

WARNING

- **The head restraints must always be adjusted to match the body size, in order to offer an optimal protection for you and your occupants.**
- **Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never put your feet out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!**
- **If the occupants on the rear seats are not sitting upright, the risk of injury is increased due to incorrect routing of the seat belt.** ■

Examples of an incorrect seated position

An incorrect seated position can lead to severe injuries or death for the occupants.

Seat belts offer their optimum protection only if the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Incorrect seated positions considerably reduce the protective functions of the seat belts and therefore increase the risk of injury due to an incorrect routing of the seat belt. The driver is fully responsible for himself and the occupants, in particular for the children. Do not permit an occupant to adopt an incorrect seated position when the car is moving.

The following list contains the examples of seated positions which are dangerous for the occupants. This list is not complete, however we would like you to get interested in this subject.

Therefore, while the car is moving never:

- stand up in the vehicle,
- stand up on the seats,
- kneel onto the seats,
- tilt the backrest fully to the back,

- lean against the dash panel,
- lie on the rear seats,
- only sit on the front area of the seat,
- sit to the side,
- lean out of the window,
- put the feet out of the window,
- put the feet on the dash panel,
- put the feet on the seat upholstery,
- occupy the footwell,
- have the seat belt not fastened,
- occupy the luggage compartment.

WARNING

- **If the occupant adopts an incorrect seated position, he is exposed to life-threatening injuries, in case he is hit by a deployed airbag.**
- **Before setting off, please adopt the correct seated position and do not change this seated position while the car is moving. Also advise your occupants to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this seated position while the car is moving.** ■

Seat belts

Why seat belts?

Fig. 147 Driver wearing seat belt

It is a proven fact that seat belts offer good protection in accidents ⇒ fig. 147. Thus wearing a seat belt is a legal requirement in most countries.

Seat belts which have been correctly fastened and adjusted hold the occupants of the car in the correct seated position ⇒ fig. 147. The belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

The occupants of a vehicle who have fastened and correctly adjusted their seat belt, profit to a major extent from the fact that the kinetic energy is optimally absorbed by the belts. The structure of the front end of the vehicle and other passive safety measures, such as the airbag system, also contribute to reducing the kinetic energy. The energy produced is thus absorbed and there is less risk of injury.

Accident statistics prove that seat belts which are fastened and properly adjusted reduce the risk of an injury and enhance the chance of survival in a major accident ⇒ page 155.

It is important that you pay attention to safety measures, particularly when transporting children in the vehicle ⇒ page 171, "What you should know about transporting children!".

WARNING

- **Fasten your seat belt each time before setting off, also when driving in town! This also applies to the people seated at the rear – risk of injury!**
- **Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child ⇒ page 156, "Fastening three-point seat belts".**
- **It is important for the belt webbing to be properly routed if the seat belts are to offer the maximum protection. You can see a description of how safety belts should be fitted properly on the next pages.**

Note

Please comply with any differing legal requirements when using the seat belts. ■

The physical principle of a frontal collision

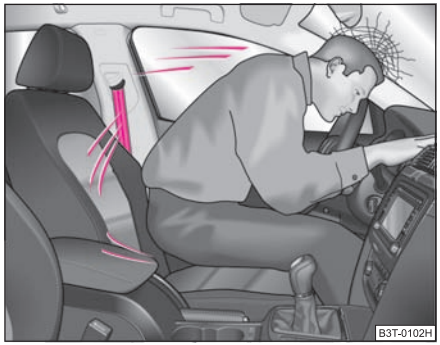

Fig. 148 The driver is thrown forward if not wearing a belt

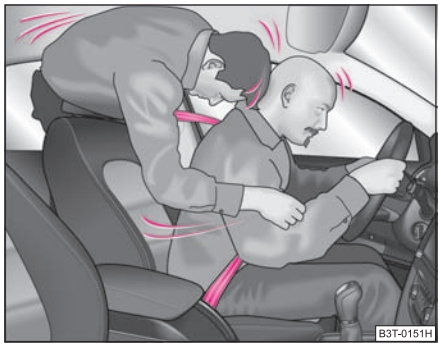

Fig. 149 The rear seat occupant is thrown forward if not wearing a belt

The physical principle of a frontal accident can be explained quite simply:

Motion energy, so-called kinetic energy, is produced as soon as the vehicle is moving, both for the vehicle and its occupants. The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle and the occupants. The greater the speed and weight increase, the greater the amount of energy which has to be absorbed in the event of an accident.

The speed of the vehicle is, nevertheless, the most important factor. Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

The common opinion that it is possible to support your body in a minor accident with your hands, is incorrect. Even in a collision at only a low speed, the forces acting on the body are such that it is no longer possible to support your body.

Even if you only drive at a speed within the range from 30 km/hour to 50 km/hour, the forces which are produced on your body in the event of an accident can easily exceed 10.000 N (Newton). This equals a weight of one tonne (1 000 kg).

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt, are thrown forward and strike in an uncontrolled way parts of the interior of the car, such as steering wheel, dash panel, windscreen,⇒ fig. 148. The occupants of a vehicle who have not fastened their seat belts may even be thrown out of the vehicle. This can result in fatal injuries.

It is also important that rear seat occupants fasten their seat belts as they will otherwise be thrown through the vehicle in an uncontrolled manner in the event of an accident A rear seat passenger who has not fastened the seat belt is a danger not only to himself but also for those seated at the front ⇒ fig. 149. ■

Important safety information regarding the use of seat belts

The correct use of the seat belts considerably reduces the risk of injury!

WARNING

- **The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.**
- **It is important that the belt webbing is properly routed if the seat belts are to offer their maximum protection ⇒ page 156, "How are seat belts correctly fastened?".**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **No two persons (also not children) should ever use a single seat belt together.**
- **The maximum protection which seat belts can offer is only achieved if you are correctly seated ⇒ page 150, “Correct seated position”.**
- **The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, keys etc.) as this may be a cause of injuries.**
- **Bulky, loose clothing (e.g. a winter coat over a jacket) does not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.**
- **It is prohibited to use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e.g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).**
- **The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.**
- **The backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.**
- **The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel ⇒ page 203, “Seat belts”.**
- **The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked by paper or similar objects otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.**
- **Inspect the seat belts regularly to ensure they are in good condition. If you find seat belts which have damage to the seat belt webbing, seat belt connections, to the inertia reels or to the lock, the relevant safety belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.**
- **The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not make an attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.**
- **Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced – this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points of the belts must also be inspected. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.**
- **In certain countries it is possible to use seat belts which differ in terms of their operation from the seat belts which are described on the pages which follow.** ■

How are seat belts correctly fastened?

Fastening three-point seat belts

Fasten your seat belt before starting!

Fig. 150 Routing of webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt

Fig. 151 Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother

– Correctly adjust the front seat and the head restraint before fastening your seat belt ⇒ page 75. ▶

– Slowly pull the belt webbing at the tongue of the lock over your chest and pelvis ⇒ ⚠.
– Insert the tongue of the lock into the seat belt buckle belonging to the seat until it is heard to lock in place.
– Pull on the belt to check that it has also reliably engaged in the lock.

Each three-point seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel. This inertia reel offers you complete freedom of movement if the belt is unreeled slowly. If the brakes are applied suddenly, the inertia reel will block. It also blocks the belts when the car accelerates, when driving uphill and when cornering.

Expectant mothers must also wear the seat belt ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- **The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across your neck but must run approximately over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the hip and must never be routed across the stomach. It must always fit snugly ⇒ page 156, fig. 150. Adjust the belt webbing as required.**
- **The lap part of the belt should be positioned as low as possible at the pelvis of an expectant mother in order to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen ⇒ page 156, fig. 151.**
- **Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.**
- **A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.**
- **Only insert the lock tongue into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. This will affect the protection which the belt offers and increase the risk of an injury.** ■

Seat belt height adjuster

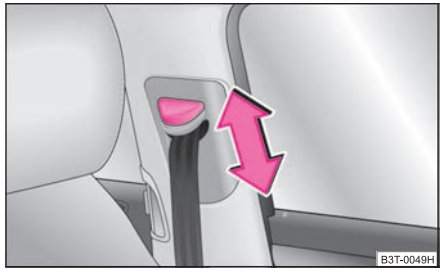

Fig. 152 Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible for you to adapt the routing of the three-point seat belt in the area of the shoulder to match your body size.

– Move the height adjuster in the desired direction up or down ⇒ fig. 152.
– Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

⚠ WARNING

Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is positioned approximately across the middle of your shoulder – on no account across your neck.

Note

It is also possible to adapt the routing of the belt webbing at the front seats by adjusting the height of the seat. ■

Taking seat belts off

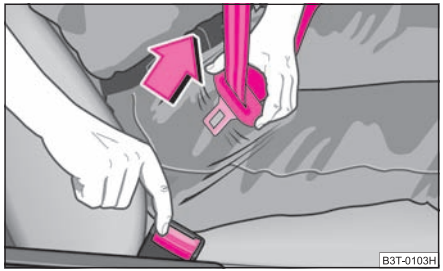

Fig. 153 Releasing lock tongue from belt lock

– Press the red button in the belt lock ⇒ fig. 153. The spring force causes the tongue of the lock to jump out.

– Guide the belt back with your hand to enable the inertia reel to wind up the belt webbing more easily.

A plastic knob in the belt webbing holds the belt tongue in a position which is easy to get hold of. ■

Three-point safety belt for the middle rear seat

Your car is equipped as standard with the three-point seat belt in the middle rear seat. It is used in the same way as the three-point seat belts on the left and right (at front and rear).

WARNING

The three-point safety belt for the rear middle seat can only fulfil its function reliably when the backrests are correctly locked into position ⇒ page 76. ■

Belt tensioners

Safety for the driver and passengers **wearing their seat belts**, is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front and rear side three-point seat belts, in addition to the protection afforded by the airbag system.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity. The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.

The belt tensioner is deployed in the event of a frontal collision of major severity. A powder charge is ignited in the inertia reels during deployment. The belt webbing is pulled into the inertia reels by a mechanical system and the belt is tensioned.

The airbag system is not activated in case of minor frontal and rear-end collisions, in the case of vehicle rollover or an accident, through which only minor negative acceleration forces are excerted onto the vehicle. In the case of a side collision, only the belt tensioner of the front seat on the side on which the collision takes place is deployed.

WARNING

- **Any work on the system including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.**
- **The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.**
- **The Owner's Manual must also be handed over to the new owner if the vehicle is sold.**

Note

- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
- It is essential to pay attention to relevant safety regulations if the vehicle or individual parts of the system are scrapped. Specialist garages are familiar with these regulations and will be able to provide you with detailed information in this respect. ▶

- When disposing of vehicle or parts of the system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements. ■

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

General information on the airbag system

The front airbag system is complementary to the three-point seat belts and offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and passenger in the event of a frontal collision.

In the case of a violent side crash, the side* and head* airbags reduce the risk of injuries to the occupants on the part of the body facing the side of the accident ⇒ ⚠.

The airbag system is only functional after the ignition has been switched on.

The operational readiness of the airbag system is monitored electronically. The airbag warning light comes on for a few seconds each time the ignition is switched on.

The airbag system (according to vehicle equipment) essentially consists of:

- an electronic control unit,
- front airbag for the driver and front passenger,
- Driver's knee airbag*,
- front side airbags,
- Rear side airbags*,
- head airbags*,
- an airbag warning light in the instrument cluster,
- a front passenger airbag switch*,
- an indicator light for a switched off front seat passenger airbag* in the middle of the dash panel.

A fault in the airbag system exists if:

- the airbag indicator light does not light up when the ignition is switched on,
- the warning light does not go out after about 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on,
- the airbag indicator light goes out and comes on again after the ignition is switched on,
- the airbag indicator light comes on or flickers when driving,
- an airbag indicator light showing a switched-off front passenger airbag* in the middle of the dash panel flashes.

⚠ WARNING

- **To enable the occupants of a car to be protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be ⇒ page 150, “Correct seated position” correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.**
- **If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.**
- **Have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage if a fault exists. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.**
- **No modifications of any kind may be made to parts of the airbag system.**
- **It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system as this might result in the airbag being deployed.**
- **The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.**
- **The airbag system needs no maintenance during its working life.**
- **If you sell your car, please hand over the complete vehicle documentation to the new owener. Please note that the documents relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag are also part of the vehicle documents!**
- **If the vehicle or individual parts of the airbag system are scrapped, it is essential to observe the relevant safety precautions. Škoda Service Partners are familiar with these regulations.**

WARNING (continued)

- **When disposing of vehicle or parts of the airbag system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements.** ■

When are the airbags deployed?

The airbag system is designed in such a way that the driver and front passenger airbag are deployed in the event of a **frontal collision** of major severity.

In the case of a **violent side crash**, the front side airbag* on the side of the car at which the collision occurs, is deployed together with the rear side airbag and the head airbag*.

In certain accident situations, the front airbags as well as the side and head airbag may be deployed together.

The airbags **are not deployed** in the case of **minor** frontal and side collisions, in the case of rear-end collisions and vehicle rollover.

Deployment factors

It is not possible to state globally which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation as the circumstances which exist in the case of accidents vary greatly. An important role in this case, for example, is played by factors such as the type of object (hard, soft) against which the vehicle impacts or the type of object against which the vehicle impacts, the angle of impact, the relative vehicle speed during the accident etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs during a collision. The control unit analyses the nature of the collision and activates the relevant restraint system. If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The airbags are not deployed if:

- ignition off,
- a minor frontal collision,
- a minor side collision,
- a rear-end collision,
- rollover of the vehicle

Note

- a grey white, non harmful gas is released when airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
- the dash panel must be replaced after the front passenger airbag has been deployed.
- in the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed:
  - the interior lighting comes on (if the switch for the interior light is in the door contact position),
  - the hazard warning light is switched on,
  - all the doors are unlocked,
  - the battery in the luggage compartment* is switched off;
  - the fuel supply to the engine is interrupted. ■

Front airbag

Description of the front airbags

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belt!

Fig. 154 Driver airbag in the steering wheel

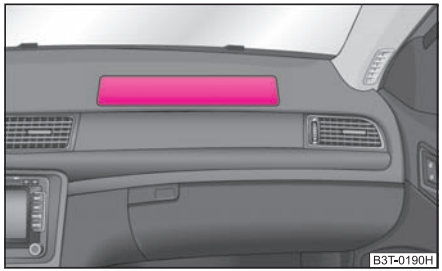

Fig. 155 Front passenger airbag in the dash panel

The front airbag for the driver is housed in the steering wheel ⇒ page 161, fig. 154. The front airbag for the front passenger is housed in the dash panel above the storage compartment ⇒ fig. 155. The installation positions are each marked with the "AIRBAG" logo.

The front airbag system, in combination with three-point safety belts, offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger in the event of a frontal collision of major severity ⇒ ⚠ in "Important safety information regarding the front airbag system" on page 163.

The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but is part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept. **Please note that an airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a seat belt which is fastened**.

Apart from their normal protective function, a further task of the **seat belts** is to also hold the driver and front passenger in a correct seated position in the event of a frontal collision so as to enable the front airbags to offer the maximum protection.

You should therefore always fasten the seat belts, not only because this is required by law, but also for safety reasons and for your own protection ⇒ page 154, "Why seat belts?".

Note

The dash panel must be replaced after the front passenger airbag has been deployed. ■

Function of the front airbags

Risk of injury to the head and chest area is reduced by fully inflated airbags.

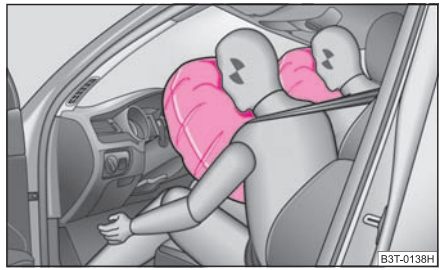

Fig. 156 Inflated airbags

The airbag system is designed in such a way that the driver and the front passenger airbag* are deployed in the event of a frontal collision of major severity.

In certain accident situations, the front, side and head airbag are simultaneously deployed.

If the airbags are deployed, the airbags are filled with a propellant gas and inflated in front of the driver and front passenger ⇒ fig. 156. The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer that additional protection in the event of an accident. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

The specially developed airbag allows the gas to flow out of the inflated airbag in a controlled manner (depending on the load of the particular car occupant) in order to cushion head and chest areas. The airbag then deflates subsequently to such an extent, after an accident, to again provide a clear view forward.

A grey white, non harmful gas is released when airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct ⇒ ⚠ in "Important safety information regarding the front airbag system" on page 163. ■

Important safety information regarding the front airbag system

Correct use of the airbag system considerably reduces the risk of injury!

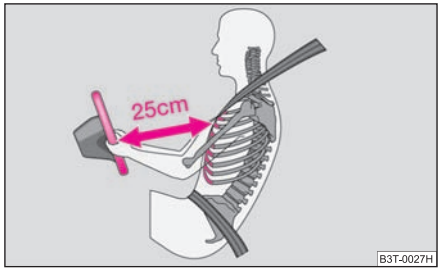

Fig. 157 Safe distance to steering wheel

WARNING

- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- For the driver and front passenger it is important to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dash panel ⇒ fig. 157. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- It is essential to always switch off ⇒ page 168, "Deactivating an airbag" the front passenger airbag when attaching a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel). If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. In certain countries national legal provisions also require that the side or head passenger airbags be deactivated. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.
- There must not by any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.
- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not be stuck onto, covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a dry cloth or a cloth moistened with water. No objects such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc. may be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within the immediate area.
- No modifications of any kind may be made to parts of the airbag system. Any work on the airbag system including installing and removing system components because of other repair work (e.g. removing the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never carry out changes on the front bumper or on the body.
- Never place any objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag in the dash panel. ■

Driver's knee airbag*

Description of the driver's knee airbags,

The knee airbag reduces the risk of injury to the legs.

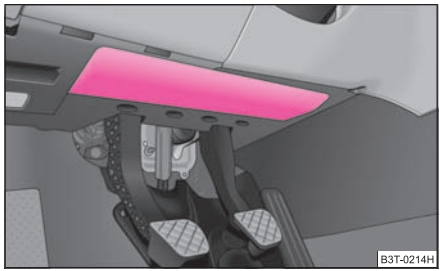

Fig. 158 Driver's knee airbag below the steering column

The driver's knee airbag is located in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column ⇒ page 164, fig. 158. The installation position is marked with the "AIRBAG" logo.

The driver's knee airbag is complementary to the three-point seat belt and offers adequate protection to the knees of the driver. **Please note that an airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a seat belt which is fastened**.

Apart from their normal protective function, a further task of the **seat belt** is to also hold the driver in a correct seated position in the event of a frontal collision so as to enable the knee airbag to offer the maximum protection.

You should therefore always fasten the seat belts, not only because this is required by law, but also for safety reasons and for your own protection ⇒ page 154, "Why seat belts?". ■

Function of the driver's knee airbags

The airbag system is designed in such a way that the driver's knee airbag is deployed together with the belt tensioner in the event of a frontal collision of major severity.

If an airbag is deployed, the airbag is filled with propellant gas. The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer that additional protection in the event of an accident.

A grey white, non harmful gas is released when airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the legs of the driver is thus reduced. ■

Important safety information on the driver's knee airbag

WARNING

- **The surface of the airbag module in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column must not be stuck onto, covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a dry cloth or a cloth moistened with water. No objects must be attached to the cover of the airbag module or be located within the immediate area.**
- **No modifications of any kind may be made to parts of the airbag system. Any work on the airbag system including installing and removing system components because of other repair work (e.g. removing the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.**
- **Never carry out changes on the front bumper or on the body.** ■

Side airbags*

Description of side airbags

The side airbag together with the head airbag offers enhanced occupant protection in the event of a side collision.

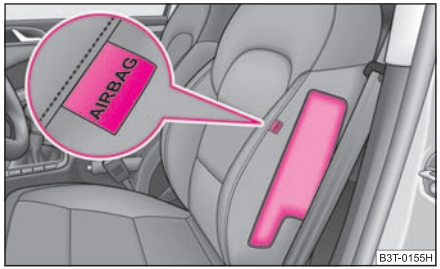

Fig. 159 Installation position of side airbag in driver seat

The front side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the backrests of the front seats ⇒ fig. 159.

The rear side airbags* are located between the entrance area and the seat backrest.

The side airbag system in combination with the three-point seat belts, offers additional protection for the upper area of the body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of the occupants of the car in the event of a side collision of major severity.

Apart from their normal protective function, a further task of the **seat belts** is to also hold the occupents of the front or rear exterior seats in a correct seated position in the event of a side collision so as to enable the side airbag to offer the maximum protection.

You should therefore always fasten the seat belts, not only because this is required by law, but also for safety reasons and for your own protection.

Each time the side airbags are deployed, the head airbag* and the front belt tensioner on the side of the car at which the collision occures, are automatically deployed at the same time in order to provide the occupant with enhanced protection. ■

Function of the side airbags

Risk of injury to the upper part of the body is reduced by fully inflated side airbags.

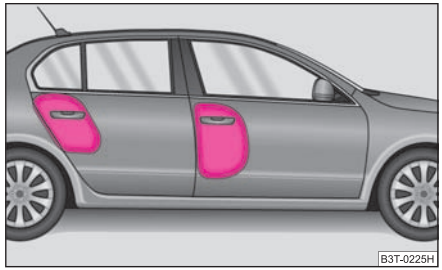

Fig. 160 Inflated side airbag

When the side airbags are deployed, the head airbag and the belt tensioner are also automatically deployed on the relevant side ⇒ fig. 160.

If an airbag is deployed, the airbag is filled with propellant gas. The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer that additional protection in the event of an accident.

A grey white, non harmful gas is released when airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door. ■

Important safety information on the side airbag

Correct use of the airbag system considerably reduces the risk of injury!

⚠ WARNING

- **It is essential to always switch off ⇒ page 168, "Deactivating an airbag" the front passenger airbag when attaching a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel). If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. In certain countries national legal provisions also require that the side or head passenger airbags be deactivated. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.**
- **Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat ⇒ page 173, "Child safety and side airbag*".**
- **If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries ⇒ page 171, "What you should know about transporting children!".**
- **There must not be any further persons, animals as well as objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. There must also be no accessories such as cup holders, attached to the doors to enable the side airbags to activate properly.**
- **The airbag control unit operates together with the pressure sensors, which are attached in the front doors. For this reason no adjustments must be carried out at the doors as well as at the door panels (for example additional installation of loudspeakers). Resulting damages can have a negative affect on the operation of the airbag system. All work on the front doors and their panels must only be carried out by a specialist garage.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **In the event of a side collision, the side airbags will not function properly, if the sensors cannot measure the increasing air pressure inside the doors, because the air can escape through large, non-sealed openings in the door panel.**
  - **Never drive with removed inner door panels.**
  - **Never drive, if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the remaining openings have not been properly sealed.**
  - **Never drive, if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, only if the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.**
  - **Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled, if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts are installed in the inner door panels.**
  - **Always work with a Škoda dealer or have it carried out by a competent specialist workshop.**
- **Only hang light items of clothing on the clothes hooks to the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.**
- **Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!**
- **Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by Škoda Auto. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.**
- **Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired without delay by your specialist garage.**
- **The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Any work on the side airbag system including removing and installing system components because of other repair work (e.g. removing seats) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.** ■

Head airbags*

Description of the head airbags

The head airbag together with the side airbag offers enhanced occupant protection in the event of a side collision.

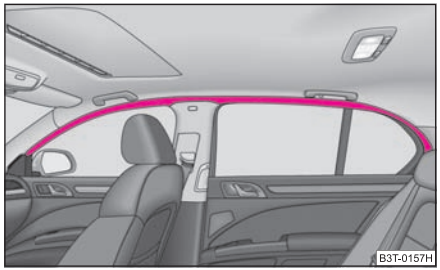

Fig. 161 Installation position of the head airbags

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides in the interior of the car ⇒ fig. 161. The installation positions are each marked with the "AIRBAG" logo.

The head airbag together with the three-point seat belts and the side airbags, offers additional protection for the head and neck area of the occupants in the event of a side collision of major severity ⇒ page 168, "Important safety information on the head airbag".

Apart from their normal protective function, a further task of the **seat belts** is to also hold the driver and the occupants in a correct seated position in the event of a side collision so as to enable the head airbags to offer the maximum protection.

You should therefore always fasten the seat belts, not only because this is required by law, but also for safety reasons and for your own protection ⇒ page 154, "Why seat belts?".

Together with other elements (such as cross bars in the seats, stable vehicle structure) the head airbags are the consequent further development of occupant protection in the case of side collisions. ■

Function of the head airbags

The risk of injury to the head and neck area is reduced in the event of a side collision by fully inflated head airbags.

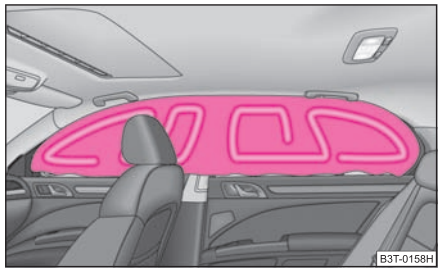

Fig. 162 Inflated head airbag

In the case of a **side collision** the head airbag is deployed together with the relevant side airbag and the belt tensioner on the side of the car on which the accident occurs ⇒ fig. 162.

If the system is deployed, the airbag is filled with propellant gas and extends over the entire area of the side window including the door pillars ⇒ fig. 162.

The protection offered by the head airbags is thus available simultaneously both to the front occupants of the car seated on the side on which the accident occurs, as well as to the rear occupants. Any impact of the head against parts of the interior or objects outside of the car, is cushioned by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area. The head airbag also ▶

offers additional protection in the case of an offset impact by covering the front door pillar.

In certain accident situations, the front, side and head airbag are simultaneously deployed.

The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer that additional protection in the event of an accident. A grey white, non harmful gas is released when airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle. ■

Important safety information on the head airbag

Correct use of the airbag system considerably reduces the risk of injury!

⚠ WARNING

• It is essential to always switch off ⇒ page 168, "Deactivating an airbag" the front passenger airbag when attaching a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel). If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. In certain countries national legal provisions also require that the side or head passenger airbags be deactivated. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.

• There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.

• Only hang light items of clothing on the clothes hooks to the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. In addition, it is not permitted to use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing.

• The airbag control unit operates together with the sensors, which are attached in the front doors. For this reason no adjustments must be carried out at the doors as well as at the door panels (for example additional instal-

⚠ WARNING (continued)

lation of loudspeakers). Resulting damages can have a negative affect on the operation of the airbag system. All work on the front doors and their panels must only be carried out by a specialist garage.

• There must not be any other persons (e.g. children) or animals between the car occupant and the deployment area of the head airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.

• The sun visors must not be swivelled to the side windows into the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.

• Installing impermissible accessories in the area of the head airbags may considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the accessories fitted may in certain circumstances be thrown into the interior of the car and cause injuries to the occupants ⇒ page 228, "Accessories, changes and replacement of parts".

• Any work on the head airbag system including installing and removing system components because of other repair work (e.g. removing headliner) must only be carried out by a specialist garage. ■

Deactivating an airbag

Deactivating airbags

If any airbags have been deactivated, switch them on again as soon as possible so that they are able to again provide their proper protection.

There is the technical means installed within your vehicle to switch off the front, side or head* airbag (take out of commission).

This is why you should have the deactivation of the airbags carried out by a specialist garage.

On vehicles equipped with the switch for deactivation of the airbags, you can deactivate the front and side passenger airbag by means of this switch ⇒ page 169.

Deactivation of airbags is envisaged only for particular instances, such as if:

- you must **in exceptional cases** use a child seat on the front passenger seat where the child has its back to the direction of travel of the vehicle (in some countries this must be in the direction of travel due to other legal regulations applying) ⇒ page 171, "Important safety information regarding the use of child safety seats"
- you are not able to maintain the distance of at least 25 cm between middle of steering wheel and chest, despite the driver seat being correctly adjusted,
- special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability,
- you have installed other seats (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

Monitoring the airbag system

The functionality of the airbag system is also monitored electronically, when one airbag has been switched off

If the airbag was switched off using diagnostic equipment:

- The warning light for the airbag system lights up for 4 seconds after switching on the ignition and then flashes for 12 seconds afterwards in 2 second intervals.

Front passenger airbags switched off using the switch for front passenger airbags* in stowage compartment on the front passenger side:

- The airbag warning light comes on in the instrument cluster for about 4 seconds each time the ignition is switched on.
- Switching off airbags is indicated in the middle of the dash panel by the lighting up of the indicator light **OFF** in display **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** ⇒ page 169, fig. 163.

Note

Your Škoda Service Partner will be able to advise you whether national legislation in your country allows airbags in your vehicle to be deactivated, and which ones. ■

Switch for the front passenger airbag*

Fig. 163 Storage compartment: Switch for the front passenger airbag

Fig. 164 Indicator light for the front passenger airbag

The front passenger airbag is deactivated with the switch.

Deactivating an airbag

– Switch off the ignition.

– Turn the slot of the airbag switch using the key in the position (2) (**OFF**) ⇒ fig. 163.

– Check whether the airbag indicator light **OFF** in display **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** in the middle of the dash panel lights up when the ignition is turned on ⇒ fig. 164.

Switching on an airbag

– Switch off the ignition.

– Turn the slot of the airbag switch using the key in the position ① (**ON**) ⇒ fig. 163.

– Check whether the airbag indicator light **OFF** in display **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** in the middle of the dash panel does not light up when the ignition is turned on ⇒ fig. 164.

The airbags should only be switched off under exceptional circumstances.

Indicator light OFF in display PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF (airbag switched off)

The airbag indicator light is located in the middle of the dash panel ⇒ fig. 164.

If the front passenger airbag is **switched off**, the airbag warning light comes on about 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on.

There is a system fault present in the airbag switch off ⇒ ⚠ if the indicator light flashes. **Please have the car inspected immediately by a specialist garage.**

⚠ WARNING

- **The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.**
- **Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for the airbag deactivation.**
- **If the indicator light OFF in display ASSENGER AIR BAG OFF (airbag switched off) flashes:**
  - **Front passenger airbag is not deployed in the event of an accident!**
  - **It is also important to have the system inspected without delay by a specialist garage.** ■

Transporting children safely

What you should know about transporting children!

An introduction to the subject

Accident statistics have revealed that children are generally more safely transported on the rear seats than on the front passenger seat.

Children younger than 12 years of age should normally travel on the rear seat of the vehicle (take note of any national legal provisions which differ from this). They should be secured there by means of a child restraint system or by using the existing seat belts depending on their age, body size and weight. The child seat should be mounted behind the front passenger seat for safety reasons.

The physical principle of an accident does, of course, also apply to children ⇒ page 155, "The physical principle of a frontal collision". They differ from adults in that their muscles and bone structure of children are not yet fully developed. Thus children are exposed to increased risk of injury.

Children should be transported by using special child safety seats in order to reduce this risk of injury.

Use only child safety seats which are officially approved and are suitable for children and which comply with the ECE-R 44 Standard, which classifies child safety seats into 5 groups ⇒ page 174, "Classification of child seats into groups". Child restraint systems which have been tested for conformity with ECE-R 44 have a non-detachable test seal (a large E within a circle and below this the test number) attached to the seat.

We recommend that you use child safety seats from the Škoda genuine accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in Škoda vehicles. They fulfil the standard ECE-R 44.

WARNING

Always comply with legal provisions and instructions from the relevant child safety seat manufacturer when installing and using the child seat

WARNING (continued)

⇒ page 171, "Important safety information regarding the use of child safety seats".

Note

Any varying national legal regulations take priority over the information provided in these instructions for use, or stated in this chapter. ■

Important safety information regarding the use of child safety seats

Correct use of child safety seats considerably reduces the risk of injury!

WARNING

- **All the occupants of the car – in particular children – must wear a seat belt when the car is moving.**
- **Children less than 1.50 m in height or younger than 12 years must not use a normal seat belt without a child restraint system otherwise this may result in injuries to the stomach and neck areas. Comply with the national legal requirements.**
- **One should never carry children, and also not babies! – on one's lap.**
- **You can transport a child safely in a suitable child safety seat ⇒ page 174, "Child seat"!**
- **Only one child may be fastened with a seat belt into a child safety seat.**
- **Never leave the child sitting unattended in the seat.**
- **Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Never allow your child to be transported in a vehicle without the use of a suitable restraint system.**
- **Children should also never stand up in a vehicle or kneel on the seats when the vehicle is moving. In the event of an accident the child will be thrown through the vehicle and may as a result suffer fatal injuries, and also injure other occupants.**
- **Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat if the airbag system deploys in the event of an accident. This can result in severe or even fatal injuries.**
- **It is important that the belt webbing is properly routed if the seat belts are to offer their maximum protection ⇒ page 156, "How are seat belts correctly fastened?". Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.**
- **Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.**
- **It is essential to always switch off ⇒ page 169 the front passenger airbag when attaching a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel). If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. In certain countries national legal provisions also require that the side and head airbags be deactivated. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.** ■

Use of child safety seats on the front passenger seat

Child safety seats should always be attached to the rear seats.

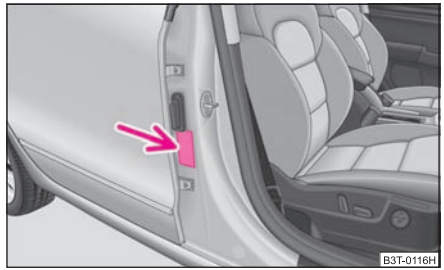

Fig. 165 Sticker on the centre column of the body on the front passenger side.

We recommend, for safety reasons, that you always mount a child restraint systems on the rear seats whenever possible. If you still decide, however, to use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat then you must pay attention to the following warnings in connection with the use of the airbag system on the front passenger seat.

WARNING

- **Warning - particular hazard! Never use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat in which the child is seated with its back facing the direction of travel. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.**
- **This is also clearly stated on the sticker which is located on the centre column of the body on the front passenger side ⇒ fig. 165. The sticker is visible upon opening the front passenger door. For some countries, the sticker is also affixed to the sun visor of the front passenger.**
- **It is essential to always switch off ⇒ page 168, "Deactivating an airbag" the front passenger airbag when attaching a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel).** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. In certain countries national legal provisions also require that the side or head passenger airbags be deactivated. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.

- **If the front passenger airbag has been switched off by a specialist garage using the vehicle system tester, the front side airbag and head passenger airbag* remains switched on. In certain countries national legal provisions require that besides the front passenger airbag also the side or head passenger airbags are deactivated. Please comply with any differing national legal regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.**
- **If a child safety seat in which the child faces in the direction of travel is used on the front passenger seat, the front passenger seat must be moved back and to the top fully in the highest position.**
- **If this is not done, a child seated on the front passenger seat may suffer severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag or airbags are deployed. Have the airbag (or airbags) deactivated if necessary ⇒ page 168, "Deactivating an airbag".**
- **You should have the front passenger airbag (or airbags) reactivated just as soon as you no longer use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat.** ■

Child safety and side airbag*

Children must never be seated in the deployment area of the side airbags and head airbags.

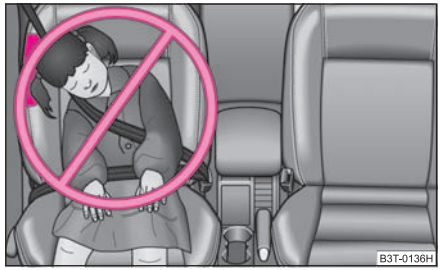

Fig. 166 Seated position of an unprotected child at risk from side airbag

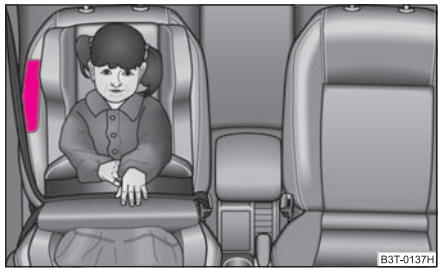

Fig. 167 Child properly protected by safety seat

In the event of a side collision, the side airbags offer the vehicle occupants enhanced protection.

The side airbags are inflated in fractions of a second in order to be able to provide this protection ⇒ page 165, "Function of the side airbags".

An airbag inflating develops such a strong force that an occupant who has not adopted an upright seated position may suffer injuries from the airbag or as a result of objects which are located within the deployment area of the side airbag. ▶

This applies particularly to children if they are not transported in accordance with legal requirements.

The child is protected when seated in a child safety seat matching its age. Adequate room is available between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag and head airbag. The airbag offers optimal protection.

WARNING

- **It is essential to always switch off ⇒ page 168 the front passenger airbag when attaching a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel). If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. In certain countries national legal provisions also require that the side and head airbags be deactivated. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.**
- **When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.**
- **Children must never be seated with their head in the deployment area of the side airbag – risk of injury!**
- **Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbag – risk of injury!** ■

Child seat

Classification of child seats into groups

Only child safety seats which have an official approval and are suitable for the child, may be used.

ECE-R 44 standard applies to child safety seats. ECE means: Economic Commission for Europe.

Child safety seats which have been tested for conformity with ECE-R 44 have a non-detachable test seal (a large E within a circle and below this the test number) attached to the seat.

Child safety seats are classified in 5 groups:

Group	Weight	
0	0 - 10 kg	⇒ page 175
0+	up to 13 kg	⇒ page 175
1	9 - 18 kg	⇒ page 175
2	15 - 25 kg	⇒ page 176
3	22 - 36 kg	⇒ page 176

Children of more than 150 cm in height may use the seat belts fitted to the vehicle without a seat bolster. ■

Use of child safety seats

An overview of the usefulness of child seats on each of the seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard:

Child seat groups	Front passenger seat	Rear seat outside	Rear seat middle
0	Ⓤ ⊕	Ⓤ ⊕ Ⓣ	Ⓤ
0+	Ⓤ ⊕	Ⓤ ⊕ Ⓣ	Ⓤ
1	Ⓤ ⊕	Ⓤ ⊕ Ⓣ	Ⓤ
2 and 3	Ⓤ	Ⓤ	Ⓤ

Ⓤ Universal category - seat is suitable for all approved types of child safety seats.
⊕ The seat can be fitted with fixing eyes for the "**ISOFIX***"system.
Ⓣ The divided rear seat - seat can be fitted with fixing eyes for the system "**Top Tether***" ⇒ page 178, "Attaching child seat using the "Top Tether" system". ■

Child seats of group 0/0+

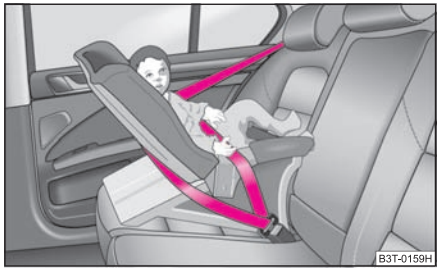

Fig. 168 Child seats of group 0/0+

The optimal solution for babies of up to about 9 months old weighing up to 10 kg or babies up to about 18 months old weighing up to 13 kg is a child safety seat which can be adjusted into the reclining position ⇒ fig. 168.

In view of the fact that such child seats are installed that the child is seated with its back facing the direction of travel, they must not be used on the front passenger seat⇒ page 172, "Use of child safety seats on the front passenger seat".

WARNING

- **It is essential to always switch off the front passenger airbag (airbags) when attaching in exceptional circumstances a child safety seat on the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel),**
  - **in a specialist garage**
  - **or by using the switch for the front passenger airbag* ⇒ page 169, "Switch for the front passenger airbag*".**
- **In certain countries national legal provisions require that besides the front airbag also the side or head airbags are deactivated. Please comply with any differing national legal regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.**

WARNING (continued)

- **If this is not done, a child seated on the front passenger seat may suffer severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag or airbags are deployed.**
- **You should have the front passenger airbag (or airbags) reactivated just as soon as you no longer use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat.** ■

Child safety seats in Group 1

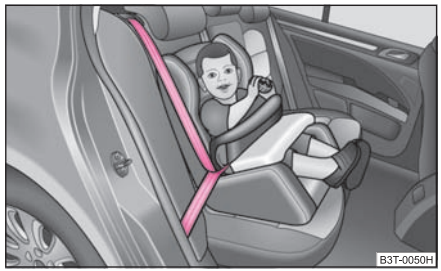

Fig. 169 Child seat with padded table in Group 1 installed on rear seat bench facing the direction of travel

Child seats in Group 1 are for babies and small children up to 4 years of age with a weight of between 9 and 18 kilograms. It is best for children in the lower range of this group, to use a child seat which allows the child to sit with its back to the direction of travel. It is best for children in the upper range of the Group 0+, to use a child seat which allows the child to sit ⇒ fig. 169 in the direction of travel.

Child safety seats in which the child is seated with its back facing the direction of travel, must not be used on the front passenger seat ⇒ page 172, "Use of child safety seats on the front passenger seat".

WARNING

- **It is essential to always switch off the front passenger airbag (airbags) when attaching in exceptional circumstances a child safety seat on the front**

WARNING (continued)

passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel (in some countries also when the child is facing the direction of travel),

- **in a specialist garage**
- **or by using the switch for the front passenger airbag* ⇒ page 169, “Switch for the front passenger airbag*”.**

- **In certain countries national legal provisions require that besides the front airbag also the side or head airbags are deactivated. Please comply with any differing national legal regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.**
- **If this is not done, a child seated on the front passenger seat may suffer severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag or airbags are deployed.**
- **You should have the front passenger airbag (or airbags) reactivated just as soon as you no longer use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat.** ■

Child safety seats in Group 2

Fig. 170 Child seat in Group 2 installed on the rear seat facing the direction of travel

For children up to about 7 years of age weighing between 15 and 25 kg the optimal solution is a child safety seat in combination with the three-point seat belt ⇒ fig. 170.

WARNING

- **When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats. If required, the airbag has to be deactivated,**
  - **in a specialist garage**
  - **or by using the switch for the front passenger airbag* ⇒ page 169, “Switch for the front passenger airbag*”.**
- **The shoulder part of the seat belt must run approximately across the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. It must on no account run across the neck. The lap part of the seat belt must run across the pelvis and fits snugly; it must not run over the belly. Tighten the belt webbing over your hip if necessary.**
- **Please comply with any differing national legal regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.** ■

Child safety seats in Group 3

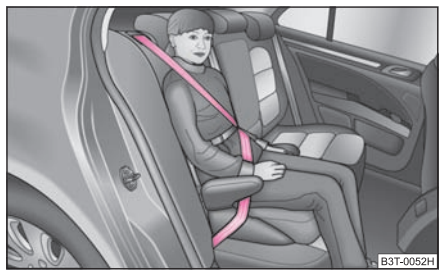

Fig. 171 Child seat in Group 3 installed on the rear seat facing the direction of travel

For children of about 7 years of age weighing between 22 and 36 kg and of a height of less than 150 cm, the optimal solution is a child safety seat (seat bolster) in combination with the three-point seat belt ⇒ fig. 171.

Children of more than 150 cm in height may use the seat belts fitted to the vehicle without a seat bolster.

WARNING

- **When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, please comply with the appropriate national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats. If required, the airbag has to be deactivated,**
  - **in a specialist garage**
  - **or by using the switch for the front passenger airbag* ⇒ page 169, "Switch for the front passenger airbag*".**
- **The shoulder part of the seat belt must run approximately across the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. It must on no account run across the neck. The lap part of the seat belt must run across the pelvis and fits snugly; it must not run over the belly. Tighten the belt webbing over your hip if necessary.**
- **Please comply with any differing national legal regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.** ■

Attaching a child seat using the "ISOFIX" system

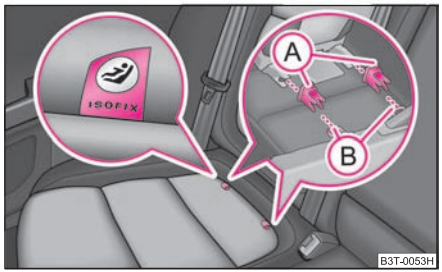

Fig. 172 Locking eyes (ISOFIX system)

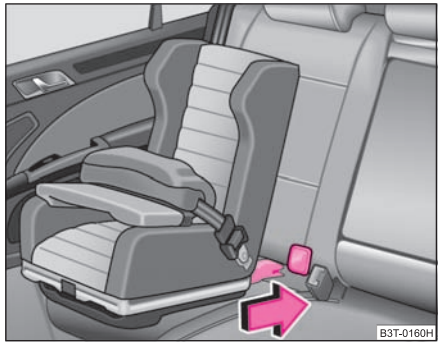

Fig. 173 The ISOFIX child seat is pushed into the mounting funnels

There are two fixing eyes* between the backrest and the seat of the front passenger as well as on the rear exterior seats for fixing the "ISOFIX" system child seat in place. The places are marked with -ISOFIX-.

Install child seat

- Insert the mounting funnels (A) onto the locking eyes (B) between the backrest and seat cushion ⇒ fig. 172.
- Push the notched arms of the child seat over the mounting funnels into the locking eyes, until it is heard to lock ⇒ fig. 173.
- **Pull on both sides of the child seat!**

One can mount a child safety seat using the "ISOFIX" system quickly, easily and reliably. Please pay close attention to instructions from the manufacturer of the child safety seat when installing and removing the seat.

Child seats fitted with the "ISOFIX" clamping system can only be mounted and fixed in a vehicle fitted with an "ISOFIX system" when these child seats have been released for this type of vehicle according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

You can obtain child seats with the "ISOFIX" attachment system from specialist garages who will also installed it as well.

Complete installation instructions are enclosed with the child safety seat.

WARNING

- **The locking eyes have just been developed for child safety seats which use the "ISOFIX" system. You should therefore never attach other child safety seats, seat belts or objects to the locking eyes – hazard!**
- **Ask a Škoda Service Partner whether a child seat which you bought for another vehicle is recommended for use in a Škoda before using an "ISOFIX" system.**
- **Certain child seats which use the "ISOFIX" system can be attached with standard three-point seat belts. Please pay close attention to instructions from the manufacturer of the child safety seat when installing and removing the seat.**

Note

- Child seats which use the "ISOFIX" system are currently available for children weighing from 9 up to 18 kg. This corresponds to an age range of from 9 months to 4 years.
- The child seats can also be fitted with the "Top Tether" system ⇒ page 178. ■

Attaching child seat using the "Top Tether" system

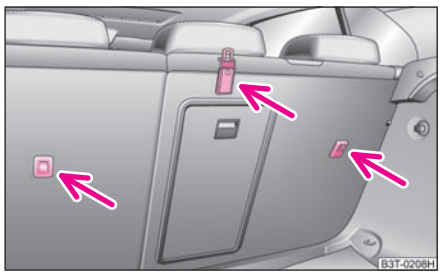

Fig. 174 Rear seat: Top Tether

IIn certain countries national legal provisions also require the equipment of the rear seat with fixing eyes for child seat using the "Top Tether" system ⇒ fig. 174.

Always perform the installation and removal of the child seat using the "Top Tether" system as stated in the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat.

WARNING

- **Attach the child seats with the "Top Tether" system only to the points provided for this purpose ⇒ fig. 174.**
- **On no account should you equip your vehicle, e.g. mount screws or other anchorage points.**
- **Pay attention to the important safety information regarding the use of child seats.**

Note

Store the remaining part of the belt for the "Top Tether" system in a textile pocket, which is located at the child seat. ■

Driving Tips

Intelligent Technology

Electronic stability programme (ESP)*

General

Fig. 175 ESP switch

General

The ESP aids you maintain control of your vehicle in situations in borderline driving situations such as when negotiating a curve too fast. The risk of skidding is reduced and your car thus offers greater driving stability depending on the conditions of the road surface. This occurs at all speeds.

The following systems are integrated into the electronic stability programme:

- Electronic Differential Lock (EDL),
- Traction control system (TCS),
- Driver-steering recommendation,
- Antilock brake system (ABS),
- Brake Assist,
- Uphill-Start off-Assist.

Operating principle

The ESP switches on automatically when the engine is started and then conducts a self-test. The ESP control unit processes data from the individual systems. It also processes additional measurement data which are supplied by highly sensitive sensors: the rotational velocity of the vehicle about its vertical axis, the lateral acceleration of the vehicle, the braking pressure and the steering angle.

The direction which the driver wishes to take is determined based on the steering angle and the speed of the vehicle and is constantly compared with the actual behaviour of the vehicle. If differences exist, such as the car beginning to skid, the ESP will automatically brake the appropriate wheel.

The car is stabilised again by the forces which take effect when the wheel is braked. Intervention into the brake system takes place primarily on the outer front wheel of a vehicle which tends to oversteer (tendency for the rear of the vehicle to break away) while occurs this is on the inner rear wheel of a vehicle which tends to understeer (tendency to shift out of the curve). This braking control cycle is accompanied by noises.

The ESP operates in combination with the ABS ⇒ page 183. If there is a fault in the ABS system, the ESP also does not operate.

The ESP warning light ⇒ page 32 lights up in the instrument cluster when there is a fault on the ESP.

Switching off

You can switch the ESP off and on again as you wish, by pressing the button ⇒ fig. 175. The ESP warning light ⇒ page 32 lights up in the instrument cluster when the ESP is switched off.

The ESP should normally always be switched on. It may be good practice in certain exceptional cases, such as when you wish to have wheel slip, to switch off the system.

Examples:

- when driving with snow chains
- when driving in deep snow or on a loose surface
- when it is necessary to rock a car free when it has become stuck.

then you should switch on the ESP again.

WARNING

It is also not possible for the ESP to overcome the physical limits of the vehicle. Even if a vehicle fitted with ESP you should still always adapt your style of driving to the condition of the road surface and the traffic situation. This particularly applies when driving on slippery and wet roads. The increased safety offered must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of an accident!

Note

- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres in order to achieve problem-free operation of the ESP. Differing rolling circumferences of the tyres can lead to an undesirable reduction in the engine output.
- Changes to vehicle (e.g. on engine, on the brakes, on chassis or other assignment of tyres and wheels) can influence the function of the ESP ⇒ page 228, “Accessories, changes and replacement of parts”. ■

Electronic Differential Lock (EDS)*

The electronic differential lock prevents an individual wheel from slipping.

Models fitted with ESP are equipped with electronic differential lock (EDL).

General

The EDL makes it much easier, and sometimes at all possible, to start off, accelerate and climb a steep hill when the conditions of the road surface are unfavourable.

Operating principle

The EDL is activated automatically, that is without any action on the part of the driver. It monitors the speeds of the driven wheels with the aid of the ABS sensors. Should only **one** drive wheel begin spinning on a slippery surface there will be an appreciable difference in the speed of the driven wheels. The EDL function brakes the slipping wheel and the differential transmits a greater driving force to the other driven wheel. This control process is also accompanied by noises.

Overheating of the brakes

The EDL switches off automatically if unusually severe stresses exist in order to avoid excessive heat generation in the disc brake on the wheel which is being braked. The vehicle can continue to be driven and has the same characteristics as a vehicle not fitted with EDL.

The EDL switches on again automatically as soon as the brake has cooled down.

WARNING

- **Depress the accelerator carefully when accelerating on uniformly slippery road surfaces, such as ice and snow. The driven wheels might still spin despite the EDL and affect the stability of the vehicle – risk of an accident!**
- **You should always adapt your style of driving to the condition of road surface and to the traffic situation even when your vehicle is fitted with EDL. The increased safety offered must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of an accident!**

Note

- If the ABS or ESP warning light comes on, this may also indicate a fault in the EDL. Please have the car inspected as soon as possible by a specialist garage.
- Changes to vehicle (e.g. on engine, on the brakes, on chassis or other assignment of tyres and wheels) can influence the function of the EDL ⇒ page 228, “Accessories, changes and replacement of parts”. ■

Traction control system (TCS)

The traction control system prevents the driven wheels from spinning when accelerating.

Fig. 176 TCS switch

General

The TCS makes it much easier, and sometimes at all possible, to start off, accelerate and climb a steep hill when the conditions of the road surface are unfavourable.

Operating principle

The TCS switches on automatically when the engine is started and then conducts a self-test. The system monitors the speeds of the driven wheels with the aid of the ABS sensors. If the wheels are spinning, the force transmitted to the road surface is automatically adapted by reducing the engine speed. This occurs at all speeds.

The TCS operates in combination with the ABS ⇒ page 183. The TCS will not function if a fault exists in the ABS system.

The TCS warning light ⇒ page 31 lights up in the instrument cluster when there is a fault on the TCS.

Switching off

You can switch the TCS off and on again as you wish by pressing the button ⇒ fig. 176. The TCS warning light ⇒ page 31 lights up in the instrument cluster when the TCS is switched off.

The TCS should normally always be switched on. It may be good practice in certain exceptional cases, such as when you wish to have wheel slip, to switch off the system.

Examples:

- when driving with snow chains
- when driving in deep snow or on a loose surface
- when it is necessary to rock a car free when it has become stuck.

then you should switch on the TCS again.

WARNING

You should always adjust your style of driving to the conditions of the road surface and the traffic situation. The increased safety offered must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of an accident!

Note

- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres in order to achieve problem-free operation of the TCS. Differing rolling circumferences of the tyres can lead to an undesirable reduction in the engine output.
- Changes to vehicle (e.g. on engine, on the brakes, on chassis or other assignment of tyres and wheels) can influence the function of the TCS ⇒ page 228, “Accessories, changes and replacement of parts”. ■

Driver-steering recommendation*

The driver-steering recommendation is an additional function of the electronic stability programme (ESP). This function indicates to the driver in critical situations by means of slight steering wheel impulses the direction evaluated by the system, in which the vehicle must be steered, so that it stabilizes. The driver-steering recommendation is active when braking sharply on different road surfaces and on the right and left vehicle side.

WARNING

Even with this additional function the vehicle cannot be steered automatically! The driver is furthermore fully reponsible for the steering of the vehicle! ■

Brakes

What has a negative effect on braking efficiency?

Wear-and-tear

Wear-and-tear to the brake pads is greatly dependent on the operating conditions of the vehicle and your style of driving. Particularly if you drive a great deal in towns and over short distances or if you adopt a sporty style of driving, it may be necessary to have the thickness of the brake pads inspected at a specialist garage between the service inspections.

Wet roads or road salt

There may be a certain delay before the brakes take full effect under certain conditions such as when driving through water, during heavy rain showers or after the vehicle has been washed in an automatic vehicle wash, since the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or even have a coating of ice on them in winter. You should dry the brakes as soon as possible (by applying and releasing the brakes several times, if the road conditions and the traffic situation allows it).

There also may be a certain delay before the full braking efficiency is available when driving on roads which have been treated with road salt if you have not used the brakes for some considerable time beforehand. The layer of salt on the brake discs and brake pads must first be rubbed off when you apply the brakes.

Corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the bake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system.

We recommend cleaning the brake discs by firmly applying the brakes at a fairly high speed if you do not make much use of the braking system or if surface corrosion is present ⇒ ⚠.

Faults in the brake surface

If you notice that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, it is possible that a brake circuit of the dual-circuit brake system has failed. Drive, in such cases, to the nearest specialist garage without delay in order to have the problem rectified. Drive at a reduced speed while on your way to the dealer and adapt your style of driving to the higher brake pedal pressure required.

Low brake fluid level

An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically ⇒ page 34, “Brake system (!)”.

WARNING

- **Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.**
- **When retrospectively mounting a front spoiler, solid wheel hubs etc. one must ensure that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced otherwise the braking system could run too hot.**
- **Allow for the fact that new brake pads do not achieve their full braking efficiency until approximately 200 kilometres. New brake pads must be first “run in” before they develop their optimal friction force. You can, however, compensate for this slightly reduced braking force by increasing the pressure on the brake pedal. This guideline also applies to any new brake pads installed at a future date.**

Caution

- Never allow the brakes to rub by applying slight pressure if you do not wish to brake the vehicle. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.
- Before negotiating a steep downhill section, please reduce your speed, shift down into the next lower gear (manual gearbox) or select a lower driving stage (automatic gearbox). This enables you to make full use of the braking power of the ▶

vehicle and reduces the strain on the brakes. Any additional braking should be done intermittently, not continuously.

Note

The hazard warning light system is switched on automatically in case of an emergency braking at speeds greater than 60 km/h. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again. ■

Brake booster

The brake booster boosts the pressure which you generate with the brake pedal. The necessary pressure is only generated when the engine is running.

WARNING

- **Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary.**
- **The brake booster only operates when the engine is running. Greater physical effort for braking is required when engine is switched off. Because if you do not stop as normal, this can cause an accident and severe injuries.** ■

Antilock brake system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking.

General

The ABS contributes significantly to enhancing the active safety of your vehicle. Compared to a car not fitted with the ABS brake system, you are able to retain optimal steering ability even during a full brake application on a slippery road surface because the wheels do not lock up.

You must not expect, however, that the braking distance will be shorter under all circumstances as a result of the ABS. The braking distance for example on gravel and fresh snow, when you should anyway be driving slowly and cautiously, will be longer.

Operating principle

The brake pressure will be reduced on a wheel which is rotating at a speed which is too low for the speed of the vehicle and tending to lock. This control cycle is noticeable from a **pulsating movement of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises. This is consciously intended to provide the driver with the information that the wheels are tending to lock (ABS control range). You must always keep the brake pedal depressed to enable the ABS to optimally control the brake application in this braking range. Never interrupt the application of the brakes!

WARNING

- **The ABS can also not overcome the physical limits of your vehicle. Please do not forget this, particularly when driving on icy or wet road surfaces. If the ABS is operating within the control range, adapt your speed immediately to the conditions of the road surface and the traffic situation. The increased safety offered by the ABS must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of an accident!**
- **The normal braking system is still fully functional if there is an ABS fault. Visit a specialist garage as quickly as possible and adjust your style of driving to take account of the ABS fault in the meantime since you will not know how great the damage is.**

Note

- A warning light comes on if a fault occurs in the ABS system ⇒ page 32.
- Changes to vehicle (e.g. on engine, on the brakes, on chassis or other assignment of tyres and wheels) can influence the function of the ABS ⇒ page 228, “Accessories, changes and replacement of parts”. ■

Brake Assist*

During a severe brake application (e.g. if a hazard exists), the Brake Assist increases the braking force and thus makes it possible to rapidly produce the pressure required in the brake system.

The majority of drivers do apply the brakes in good time in dangerous situations, but do not depress the brake pedal with sufficient pressure. Consequently, it is not possible for the car to achieve its maximum deceleration and the car covers a greater distance than necessary.

The Brake Assist is activated by the very quick operation of the brake pedal. In such cases, a much greater braking pressure exists than during a normal brake application. This makes it possible, even with a relatively low resistance of the brake pedal, to produce an adequate pressure in the brake system in the shortest possible time, which is required for maximum deceleration of the car. You must apply the brake pedal firmly and hold it in this position in order to achieve the shortest possible braking distance.

The Brake Assist is able to help you achieve a shorter braking distance in emergency situations by rapidly producing the pressure required in the brake system. It fully exploits the attributes of the ABS. After you release the brake pedal, the function of the Brake Assist is automatically switched off and the brakes operate in the normal way.

The Brake Assist is part of the ESP system. If a fault occurs in the ESP, the Brake Assist function is also not available. Further information on the ESP ⇒ page 179.

WARNING

- **The Brake Assist is also not able to overcome the physical limits of your car in terms of the braking distance required.**
- **Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road surface and to the traffic situation.**
- **The increased safety offered by the Brake Assist must not tempt you to take a greater safety risk than otherwise.** ■

Uphill-Start off-Assist*

The uphill-start off-assist makes it much easier to start off on steep hills. The system assists a start off by holding the brake pressure produced by the brake pedal actuation for approx. 2 seconds after releasing the brake pedal. The driver can therefore move his foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal and start off on the slope, without having to actuate the handbrake. The brake pressure drops gradually the more you operate the accelerator pedal. If the vehicle does not start off within 2 seconds, it starts to roll back.

The uphill-start off-assist is active in the event of a 5% slope, if the vehicle door is closed. It is always active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off. When driving downhill, it is inactive. ■

Electromechanical power steering

The power steering enables you to steer the vehicle with less physical force.

With the electromechanical power steering, the steering assist is automatically adapted to the speed and to the steering angle.

It is still possible to fully steer the vehicle if the power steering fails or if the engine is not running (vehicle being towed in). The only difference is that greater physical effort is required.

If there is a fault in the power steering, a red or yellow warning light lights up in the instrument cluster ⇒ page 29.

WARNING

Contact your specialist garage if the power steering is defective. ■

Tyre inflation pressure-control system*

Fig. 177 Button for setting the tyre inflation pressure control value

The tyre inflation pressure-control system compares with the aid of the ABS sensors the speed and also the rolling circumference of the individual wheels. If the rolling circumference of a wheel is changed, the warning light (!) lights up in the dash panel insert ⇒ page 32. The rolling circumference of the tyre can change if:

- the tyre inflation pressure is too low,
- the structure of the tyre is damaged,
- the vehicle is loaded on one side,
- the wheels of an axle are loaded heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill),
- snow chains are mounted,
- the temporary spare wheel is mounted,
- one wheel per axle was changed.

Basic setting of tyre inflation pressure-control system

After changing the tyre inflation pressures or after changing one or several wheels, a basic setting of the system must be carried out as follows.

- Inflate all tyres to the specified inflation pressure ⇒ page 222.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Press button **SET** (!) ⇒ fig. 177 for more than 2 seconds. While pressing the button, the warning light (!) lights up. At the same time the memory of the system is erased and the new calibration is started, which is confirmed with an audible signal and then the warning light (!) goes out.
- If the warning light (!) does not go out after the basic setting, there is a fault in the system. Have the vehicle inspected by your nearest specialist garage.

Warning light (!) lights up

If the tyre inflation pressure of at least one wheel is insufficiently inflated in comparison to the stored basic value, the warning light (!) ⇒ ⚠ lights up.

Warning light (!) flashes

If the warning light flashes, there is a system fault. Have the vehicle inspected by your nearest specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING

- **When the warning light (!) lights up, immediately reduce the speed and avoid sudden steering and brake manoeuvres. Please stop the vehicle without delay at the nearest possible stop and inspect the tyres and their inflation pressures.**
- **The driver is responsible for the correct tyre inflation pressures. For this reason, the tyre inflation pressures must be checked regularly.**
- **Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light (!) can be delayed or does not light up at all.**
- **The tyre inflation pressure-control system does not take away the responsability from the driver for the correct tyre inflation pressure.**

Note

The tyre inflation pressure-control system:

- does not replace the regular tyre inflation pressure control, because the system cannot detect an even pressure loss,
- cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage. In this case carefully bring the vehicle to a standstill without sudden steering movements and without sharp braking. ■

Diesel particle filter* (diesel engine)

In the diesel particle filter the resulting soot particles are collected and burnt during the combustion of diesel fuel.

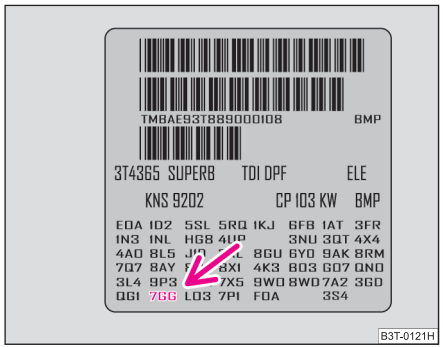

Fig. 178 Vehicle data sticker

Code **7GG** on the vehicle data sticker ⇒ fig. 178 indicates that your vehicle is equipped with a diesel particle filter. The vehicle data sticker is located on the floor of the luggage compartment and is also stated in the Service schedule.

The diesel particle filter filters the soot particles completely from the exhaust. The soot is collected in the diesel particle filter and burnt regularly. To assist this procedure, we recommend not to drive regularly over short distances.

If the diesel particle filter is clogged or there is a fault, it is indicated by the warning light.

WARNING

- **The diesel particle filter achieves very high temperatures. Therefore do not park at points where the hot filter comes into direct contact with dry grass or other combustible materials – risk of fire!**

WARNING (continued)

- **Never use additional underbody protection or corrosion-protection agents for the exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filter or heat shields. When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances might ignite – risk of fire.**

Note

When using diesel fuel with high sulphur content the life of the diesel particle filter is clearly reduced. A specialist garage will be able to tell you which countries use only diesel fuel with high sulphur content. ■

Driving and the Environment

A new engine

The engine has to be run in during the first 1 500 kilometres.

Up to 1 000 kilometres

- Do not drive faster than 3/4 of the mamimum speed of the gear in use, that is 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed.
- Do not use full throttle.
- Avoid high engine revolutions.
- Do not tow a trailer.

From 1 000 up to 1 500 kilometres

- Increase the power output of the engine **gradually** up to the full speed of the gear engaged, that is up to the maximum permissible engine revolutions.

During the first operating hours the engine has higher internal friction than later until all of the moving parts have harmonized. The driving style which you adopt during the first approx.1 500 kilometres plays a decisive part in the success of running in your car.

You should not drive at unnecessarily **high engine revolutions** even after the running-in period is complete. The maximum permissible engine speed is marked by the beginning of the red zone on the scale of the revolutions counter. Shift up into the next higher gear on a vehicle fitted with manual gearbox before the red zone is reached. **Extremely** high engine revolutions are automatically governed, by the way.

For a vehicle fitted with a manual gearbox the converse situation also applies: Do not drive at engine revolutions which are **too low**. Shift down as soon as the engine is no longer running smoothly.

Caution

All the speed and engine revolution figures apply only when the engine is at its normal operating temperature. Never rev up an engine which is cold, neither when the vehicle is stationary nor when driving in individual gears.

For the sake of the environment

Not driving at unnecessarily high engine revolutions and shifting to a higher gear as early as possible are ways to minimise fuel consumption and operating noise levels and protects the environment. ■

New tyres

New tyres have to be "run in" since they do not offer optimal grip at first. You should take account of this fact for the first 500 kilometres and drive particularly carefully. ■

New brake pads

Allow for the fact that new brake pads do not achieve their full braking efficiency until approximately 200 kilometres. New brake pads must be first "run in" before they develop their optimal friction force. You can, however, compensate for this slightly reduced braking force by increasing the pressure on the brake pedal.

This guideline also applies to any new brake pads installed at a future date.

During the running-in period, you should avoid excessive stresses on the brakes. This includes, for example, violent braking, particularly from very high speeds, and also when crossing mountain passes. ■

Catalytic converter

Proper operation of the emission control system (catalytic converter) is of major significance for driving your vehicle in an environmentally conscious way.

Please refer to the following guidelines.

- For vehicles with petrol engine only refuel with unleaded petrol ⇒ page 205, “Grades of petrol”.
- Never run the fuel tank completely empty.
- Do not switch off the ignition while you are driving the vehicle.
- Do not pour too much oil into the engine ⇒ page 212, “Replenishing engine oil”.
- Do not tow-start the vehicle over a distance of more than 50 metres ⇒ page 237, “Tow-starting and towing vehicle”.

If you drive your vehicle in a country in which unleaded petrol is not available, you must have the catalytic converter replaced later when driving the vehicle into a country in which use of a catalytic converter is mandatory.

WARNING

- **In view of the high temperatures which may be produced in the catalytic converter, one should always park a vehicle in such a way that the catalytic converter cannot come into contact with easily flammable materials below the vehicle – a risk of fire!**
- **Never use additional underbody protection or corrosion-protection agents for the exhaust pipes, catalytic converters or heat shields. Such substances might ignite when driving – risk of fire!**

Caution

- Vehicles fitted with catalytic converter should never be allowed to let the fuel tank to run completely empty. An irregular fuel supply can result in poor ignition or misfiring. Unburnt fuel may get into the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.
- Filling the tank even only once with leaded petrol will result in the catalytic converter being destroyed.
- If you detect misfiring, a drop in performance or irregular engine running when driving, reduce your speed immediately and have the vehicle inspected by the nearest specialist garage. The symptoms described may be caused by a fault in the ignition system. Unburnt fuel may get into the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.

For the sake of the environment

Even if the exhaust system is operating properly, a sulphur-like exhaust odour may be produced under certain operating conditions of the engine. This depends on the sulphur content of the fuel. It is often sufficient to refuel with unleaded premium-grade petrol of a different brand or at a different filling station. ■

Driving in an economical and environmentally conscious manner

General

Your personal style of driving is a major factor.

Your fuel consumption, any pollution of the environmental and the wear-and-tear to the engine, brakes and tyres, depend essentially on three factors:

- your personal style of driving,
- the conditions under which your vehicle is operated,
- technical aspects.

You can easily improve your fuel economy by 10 - 15 percent by driving in an economical way with foresight. This section is intended to provide you with a number of tips on how to protect the environment and at the same time save money.

The fuel consumption can naturally also be influenced by factors which are beyond the driver's control. It is, for example, normal for the fuel consumption to increase in winter and under worsened conditions such as poor road conditions, towing a trailer, etc.

The technical requirements for low fuel usage and economic efficiency of the vehicle have already been built into the vehicle at the works. Special attention has been given to minimising negative effects on the environment. It is necessary to take note of the guidelines given in this chapter in order to make best use of these characteristics and to maintain their effectiveness.

The optimal engine speed should be obtained when accelerating, in order to avoid a high fuel consumption and resonance of the vehicle. ■

Looking ahead when driving

A vehicle's highest fuel consumption occurs it accelerates.

Avoid accelerating and braking unnecessarily. If you drive with forsight you will not need to brake so often and will also then not have to accelerate so much. Let your vehicle coast to a stop, for example, if this is possible, when you see that the next set of traffic lights is at red. ■

Shifting gears and saving energy

Shifting up early saves on fuel.

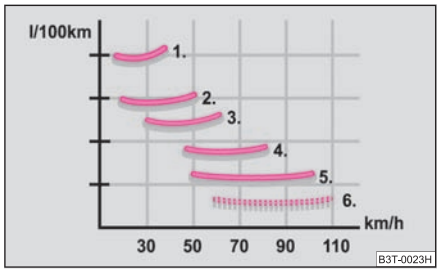

Fig. 179 Fuel consumption in litres/100 km. and speed in km/h.

Manual gearbox

– Drive no more than about one length of your vehicle in first gear.

– Always shift up into the next higher gear at approx. 2 000 to 2 500 revs.

Automatic gearbox

– Depress the accelerator pedal **slowly**. Do not depress it beyond the kickdown position, however.

An effective way of achieving good fuel economy is to shift up **early**. You will consume more fuel if you drive at unnecessarily high revolutions in any given gear.

The ⇒ fig. 179 shows the ratio of fuel consumption to the speed of your vehicle in the relevant gears. Fuel consumption in 1st gear is the highest, while that in 5th or the 6th gear is the lowest.

Only depress the accelerator pedal slowly if your vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox in order to automatically select an economic driving programme. You will achieve good fuel economy by shifting up early and shifting down late.

Note

Also use the information supplied by the multi-functional indicator* ⇒ page 14. ■

Avoiding full throttle

Driving more slowly means saving fuel.

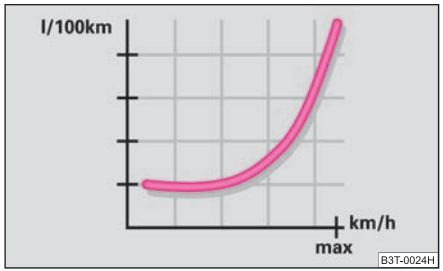

Fig. 180 Fuel consumption in litres/100 km. and speed in km/h.

Sensitive use of the accelerator will not only significantly reduce fuel consumption but also positively influence environmental pollution and wear of your vehicle.

You should avoid fully exploiting the top speed of your vehicle wherever possible. Fuel consumption, pollutant emissions and vehicle noises increase disproportionally at high speeds.

The ⇒ fig. 180 shows the ratio of fuel consumption to the speed of your vehicle. You will cut your fuel consumption by half if you only make use three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle. ■

Reducing idling

Idling also costs fuel.

It is worthwhile switching off the engine in a traffic jam or when waiting at a level crossing or at traffic lights with a lengthy red phase. Even after just 30 - 40 seconds you will have saved more fuel than that is needed when you start the engine up again.

If an engine is only idling it takes much longer for it to reach its normal operating temperature. Wear-and-tear and pollutant emissions, though, are particularly high in the warming-up phase. This is why you should drive off right after starting the engine. Do avoid high engine revolutions at this time, however. ■

Regular servicing

A poorly tuned engine consumes an unnecessarily high amount of fuel.

Having your vehicle serviced regularly at a specialist garge enables you to satisfy **one** of the requirements for economical motoring even before you set off on your journey. Keeping your vehicle properly serviced not only has a positive effect on the safety of your vehicle and maintaining its value, but also saves on **fuel**.

A poorly tuned engine can result in a fuel consumption which is 10% higher than normal.

The foreseen maintenance work should be undertaken exactly according to the Service schedule by a specialist garage.

Also check the **oil level** after refueling. **Oil consumption** is dependent to a considerable extent on the load and speed of the engine. Oil consumption could be as high as 0.5 litres/1 000 km depending on your style of driving.

It is quite normal that a new engine has a higher oil consumption at first, and reaches its lowest level only after a certain running in time. It is therefore not possible to correctly assess the oil consumption of a new vehicle until after you have driven about 5 000 km.

For the sake of the environment

- You can achieve additional improvements in your fuel economy by using high-lubricity oils.
- Check the ground below your car at regular intervals to detect any leakages in good time. Please have your vehicle inspected by a specialist garge if you find any stains caused by oil or other fluids on the floor. ■

Avoid driving short distances

Short distances result in an above-average high fuel consumption.

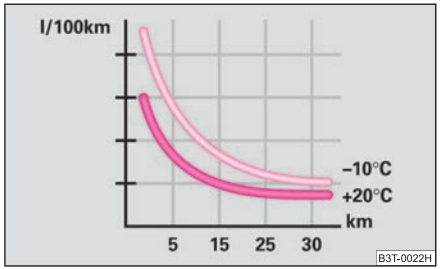

Fig. 181 Fuel consumption in litres/100 km at different temperatures

– Avoid driving a distance of no more than 4 km if the engine is cold.

The engine and catalytic converter must first have reached their optimal **operating temperature** in order to effectively reduce fuel consumption and pollutant emissions.

The cold engine vehicle consumes approx. 15 - 20 litres/100 km of fuel immediately after starting. Fuel consumption drops to 10 litres/100 km after just 1 kilometre. The engine reaches its operating temperature (outside temperature and engine dependent) only after about **4 to 10** kilometres and the fuel consumption then stabilizes. You should therefore avoid driving short distances whenever possible.

An important factor in this connection is also the **ambient temperature**. The ⇒ fig. 181 shows the different fuel consumptions for the same distance, on the one hand at +20°C and on the other hand at -10°C. Your vehicle has a higher fuel consumption in winter than in summer. ■

Checking tyre inflation pressures

Tyres which are correctly inflated save fuel.

Always ensure that your tyres are inflated to the correct pressure at all times. The rolling resistance will be increased if the tyre filling pressure is too low. This will not only increase fuel consumption but also tyre wear and the driving behaviour will worsen.

Always check the inflation pressure of the tyres when **cold**.

Do not drive with **winter tyres** all year round for this costs about 10 % more fuel. Winter tyres are also louder. ■

No unnecessary ballast

Transporting ballast costs fuel.

The fact that every kilogram of extra **weight** increases your fuel consumption means that it is worth taking a look in the luggage compartment to avoid transporting any unnecessary ballast.

It is particularly in town traffic, when one is accelerating quite often, that the vehicle weight will have a significant effect upon the fuel consumption. A rule of thumb here is that an increase in weight of 100 kilograms will cause an increase in fuel consumption of about 1 litre/100 kilometres.

You may frequently also leave a **roof rack fitted** on just out of convenience, although you no longer need it. The increased aerodynamic drag of your vehicle causes it to use about 10% more fuel than normal at a speed of 100 - 120 km/h, even when you are not carrying a load on the roof. ■

Saving electricity

Generating electricity costs fuel.

– Switch off electrical components as soon as you no longer need them.

When the engine is running, the alternator generates and supplies electrical power. The greater the load on the alternator as a result of having a large number of electrical components switched on, the more fuel will be consumed for operating the alternator. ■

Keeping a log of your fuel consumption

If you really wish to keep a close check on your **fuel consumption**, it is best to enter the figures in a logbook. This does not take much time but is a very worthwhile exercise. It enables you to detect any change (positive and negative) at an early stage and to take any appropriate action.

If you find that your fuel consumption is too high, you should reflect on how, where and in what conditions you have driven the vehicle since you last refuelled. ■

Environmental compatibility

Environmental protection has played a major role in the design, selection of materials and manufacture of your new Škoda. Particular emphasis has been paid to a number of aspects, including:

Design measures

- joints designed to be easily detached,
- simplified disassembly due to the modular structure system,
- improved purity of different classes of materials,
- identification of all plastic parts in accordance with VDA Recommendation 260,
- reduced fuel consumption and exhaust emission CO_2,
- minimum fuel leakage during accidents,
- reduced noise.

Choice of materials

- extensive use of recyclable material,
- air conditioning filled with CFC-free refrigerant,
- no cadmium,
- no asbestos,
- reduction in the “vaporisation” of plastics.

Manufacture

- solvent-free cavity protection,
- solvent-free protection of the vehicle for transportation from the production plant to the customer,
- the use of solvent-free adhesives,
- no CFCs used in the production process,
- without use of mercury,
- use of water-soluble paints. ■

Motoring abroad

General

Other circumstances may exist abroad.

It is also possible, in certain countries, that the Škoda Service Partner network is limited or has not been established yet. This is the reason why obtaining certain spare parts may be somewhat complicated and specialist garage personnel may only be able to make limited repairs. Škoda Auto a.s. in the Czech Republic and relevant importers are happy to provide information about technical aspects of the vehicle, required maintenance work and possibilities for getting repairs done. ■

Unleaded petrol

A vehicle fitted with a petrol engine must always be refuelled with unleaded petrol ⇒ page 188. The automobile associations can provide you with information regarding the locations of filling stations which offer unleaded petrol. ■

Headlight

The low beam of your headlights is set asymmetrically. It illuminates the side of the road on which you are driving to a greater extent. If you drive abroad on the other side of the road, you will dazzle oncoming traffic.

In order to prevent the dazzling of oncoming traffic, it is necessary that an adjustment of the headlights is carried out by your Škoda Service Partner.

The adaptation of the headlight with Xenon lights* (applies only to vehicles which are designed for driving right and left) is performed in the menu **Automatic light (Automat. Lights)** in main menu of the Information Display* ⇒ page 19. ■

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

When driving on poor roads and lanes or when driving over kerbstones, steep ramps etc., you must pay particular attention to ensuring that any low-slung parts of the vehicle, such as spoiler and exhaust, do not touch the ground and get damaged.

This particularly applies to models with a lowered suspension (sport suspension) and also when your vehicle is fully laden. ■

Towing a trailer

Towing a trailer

Technical requirements

The towing device must satisfy certain technical requirements.

Your vehicle is designed primarily for transporting persons and luggage. It can, however, also be used for towing a trailer - provided certain technical equipment is fitted.

If your vehicle has already been supplied with a **factory-fitted** towing device then everything that is necessary for towing a trailer in technical terms, and in terms of the law, has already been taken into account.

Your vehicle is fitted with a 13-pin power socket for the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer. If the trailer which you wish to tow has a **7-pin connector**, you can use a suitable adapter [14] from Škoda original accessories.

This work must be carried out in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications if a towing device is retrofitted.

Škoda Service Partners are familiar with details relating to retrofitting a towing device and for any necessary modifications to the cooling system.

WARNING

We recommend that you have the towing device from Škoda original accessories installed by a Škoda Service Partner. He is familiar with all the relevant details relating to retrofitting such equipment. There is a risk of an accident if the towing device is not properly fitted! ■

[14] In some countries the adapter is supplied with the towing device.

General Maintenance

There are a number of points to pay attention to when towing a trailer.

Trailer load

The permissible trailer load must on no account be exceeded.

You can negotiate appropriately steeper inclines and descents if you do not make full use of the permissible trailer load.

The trailer loads specified only apply for **altitudes** up to 1 000 metres above mean sea level. The fact that the engine power output drops with increasing height due to a lowering of air pressure and thus the ability to climb, means that the towed weight must be reduced by 10% for every further increase of 1 000 metres in height above sea level. The towed weight is the weight of the (laden) vehicle and the (laden) trailer together. One should take this into account before driving up to higher altitudes.

The trailer and drawbar load information on the type plate of the towing device are merely test data for the towing device The data relating to your vehicle, which is often less than this test data, can be found in your vehicle registration documents.

Distribution of the load

Distribute the load in the trailer in such a way that any heavy items are located as close as possible to the axle. Secure the items to prevent them slipping.

Tyre inflation pressure

Select the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle for that of "fully laden", ⇒ page 222. The inflation pressure of the tyres fitted to the trailer adjust in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation.

Exterior mirrors

You have to have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors. Both exterior mirrors ▶

should be attached to folding arms. Adjust the mirrors so that they provide you with an adequate field of view to the rear.

Headlights

Before starting off with a hitched trailer, also check the setting of the headlights. Alter the setting as necessary with the aid of the headlight beam adjuster ⇒ page 59, “Headlamp range adjustment* ”.

Detachable ball head

The ball rod is detachable on vehicles which feature a factory-fitted towing device. It is stowed together with separate fitting instructions in the spare wheel well in the luggage compartment of the vehicle.

Further information on the towing device ⇒ page 196.

Note

- We recommend that you also have your vehicle inspected between service intervals if you tow a trailer frequently.
- The handbrake on the towing vehicle must be put on when coupling and decoupling the trailer. ■

Driving Tips

Particular caution is required when towing a trailer.

- Do not, as far as possible, drive with your vehicle unladen and the trailer laden.
- Do not make full use of the legal maximum speeds. This applies in particular to downhill sections.
- Apply the brakes in good time.
- Keep a check on the coolant temperature gauge if the outside temperature is high.

Distribution of weight

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Maintain a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

Driving speed

Do not drive faster than 80 km/hour for safety reasons. This also applies for countries in which higher speeds are allowed.

The fact that the driving stability of the vehicle + trailer combination reduces with increasing speed means that the legally allowed speed should not be used when there are unfavourable road, weather or wind conditions, particularly near accident black spots.

You must always reduce your speed immediately as soon as you detect even just the **slightest swaying** of the trailer. On no account attempt to stop the trailer from “swaying” by accelerating.

Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first and then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking. Shift down gears in good time before negotiating a downhill section to allow the engine to also act as a brake.

Engine overheating

Please keep a check on the coolant temperature gauge if you have to negotiate a lengthy slope in a low gear at a high engine speed when the outside temperature is very high ⇒ page 11, “Coolant temperature gauge”.

If the needle of the coolant temperature gauge moves into the right-hand area or even the red area of the scale, reduce your speed immediately. Stop and switch off the engine if the warning light in the instrument cluster begins flashing. Wait a few minutes and check the level of coolant in the coolant expansion bottle ⇒ page 214, “Inspecting the coolant level”.

Please refer to the following guidelines ⇒ page 31, “Coolant temperature/ Coolant quantity ”.

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating.

Any increase in the cooling effect of the coolant fan through shifting down a gear and increasing the engine speed is not possible since the fan speed is independent ▶

of the engine speed. One should also not drop a gear for this reason when towing a trailer as long as the engine can manage the slope without any drop in speed. ■

Detachable towing device*

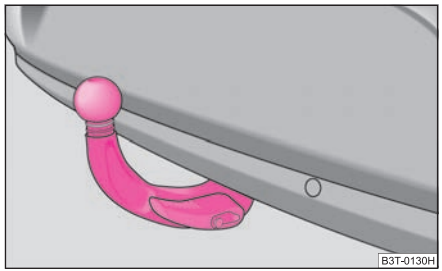

Fig. 182 Detachable ball head

The detachable ball head of the towing device is stowed in a box for the car tool kit in the spare wheel well in the luggage compartment.

An instruction for correct installation and removal of the ball head of the towing device is supplied with the ball head

Inspect the ball head to ensure that it is properly locked each time before setting off. The inspection is performed by turning the closed locking lever downwards. If the locking lever can only be turned around a small angle (approx. 5°), the locking mechanism is O.K. After the inspection pull the locking lever back again to its stop. The towing device must not be used, if it does not wish to close or the locking lever turns slightly in the closed position.

WARNING

Do not use any aids or tools for installing or removing the ball head. This might result in damage to the locking mechanism to the extent that the safety of the towing device is no longer assured – risk of an accident.

Note

- Do not carry out any modifications or repairs to the ball head or to any other components on the towing device.
- Contact a specialist garage if you encounter any problems using the device.
- Never unlock the ball head with a trailer coupled to it.
- You should take off the ball head if you drive without towing a trailer. Inspect whether the end cover properly seals off the mounting shaft.
- Remove the ball head beforehand if you wish to clean your vehicle using a steam jet. Ensure that the end cover properly seals the mounting shaft.
- It is recommended to wear gloves when installing and removing. ■

General Maintenance

Taking care of your vehicle and cleaning the vehicle

General

Proper care retains the value of your vehicle.

Regular and proper care retains **the value** of your vehicle. It may also be one of the requirements for the acceptance of warranty claims relating to corrosion damage and paint defects on the bodywork.

We recommend using a preservative from Škoda genuine accessories offered by your Škoda dealer. Please follow the instructions for use on the package.

WARNING

- **Care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.**
- **Always store care products in a safe place, out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!**

For the sake of the environment

- Always select environmentally-friendly products when purchasing vehicle care products.
- Do not dispose of the packages with residues of care products in domestic waste. ■

Care of the exterior of vehicle

Washing the vehicle

Frequent washing protects your vehicle.

The best protection for your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing and wax treatment. How often you should wash your vehicle depends on a wide range of factors, such as:

- Frequency of use,
- The parking situation (garage, below trees etc.),
- Season of the year,
- Weather conditions,
- Environmental influences.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, tree sap, road and industrial dust, tar, soot particles, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It may therefore be necessary, in certain circumstances, to wash the car **once a week**. It may also be sufficient, however, to wash the car **once a month** followed by appropriate wax treatment.

It is essential to also thoroughly wash the **underside of your vehicle** at the end of the winter road salting and gritting period.

WARNING

When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the brake system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident! ■

Automatic vehicle wash systems

The paintwork of the vehicle is sufficiently resistant that the vehicle can be washed normally in automatic vehicle wash plants without any problem. The actual stress to which the paintwork is subjected, however, depends greatly on the design of the vehicle wash system, the filtering of the water and the type of washing and care products used. If the paintwork of your vehicle appears mat after being washed or even has scratches, point this out to the operator of the vehicle wash plant. Use a different vehicle wash plant, if necessary.

There are no particular points to note before washing your vehicle in such a plant other than the usual precautionary measures (closing windows and sliding/tilting roof, moving any factory-fitted aerials down flat against the bodywork, etc.).

If you have any particular attached parts fitted to your car – such as spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial – it is best to first of all consult the operator of the car wash plant.

It is important to degrease the lips of the windscreen wiper rubbers after passing through the automatic vehicle wash system.

Caution

Do not screw the swivelling down roof aerial tight before washing the vehicle in an automatic vehicle wash system – risk of damage! ■

Washing vehicle by hand

It is important to first soften the dirt with plenty of water and rinse it off as thoroughly as possible before washing your vehicle by hand.

One should then clean the vehicle using a soft **washing sponge**, **washing glove** or a **washing brush** and only slight pressure. Work from the top to the bottom – beginning with the roof. Only place slight pressure on the vehicle paintwork during cleaning Only use a **car shampoo** for stubborn dirt.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Rinse off the vehicle well after giving it a wash and dry it off using a chamois leather.

WARNING

- **The ignition should always be switched off when you wash your vehicle – risk of accident!**
- **Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when you are cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts.**

Caution

- Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight – risk of paint damage.
- Ensure that the jet of water is not aimed directly at the locks or at the door and panel joints if you spray your vehicle in winter down with a hose – risk of freezing.
- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damage to the surface of paintwork.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash your vehicle at washing bays specifically reserved for this purpose. This ensures that no water which may be contaminated by oil flows into the sewage system. It is not even permitted to wash your vehicle in certain areas except at such specific washing bays. ■

Washing with a high-pressure cleaner

When you wash your vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, it is essential to comply with the instructions for use of the cleaning equipment. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**. Maintain a sufficiently large distance to soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

On no account use **circular spray nozzles** or so-called **dirt cutters**!

WARNING

It is particularly important that you do not clean tyres with circular spray jets. Visible but also invisible damage to tyres may occur even at a relatively large spraying distance and if sprayed only for a short time – risk of accident!

Caution

The water containing wax must be no hotter than 60°C, otherwise the vehicle can be damaged. ■

Wax treatment

Good wax treatment is an effective way of protecting the paintwork from harmful environmental influences and minor mechanical damage.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly. Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

Caution

Never apply wax to the windows. ■

Polishing

Polishing is only necessary if the paintwork of your vehicle has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservers.

You must treat the paintwork with a wax preserver if the polish you use does not contain any preserving elements ⇒ page 199.

We recommend using a preservative from Škoda genuine accessories offered by your Škoda dealer.

Caution

- You must not treat mat painted parts or plastic with polishing products or hard wax.
- Do not polish the paintwork of the vehicle in a dusty environment, otherwise the paintwork can be scratched. ■

Chrome parts

First clean the chrome parts with a damp clotch and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth. If it does not prove to be adequate, use a chrome care product from Škoda original accessories.

Caution

Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment, otherwise they can be scratched. ■

Paint damage

Slight damage to paintwork such as scratches, scuffs or traces of chip damage must be touched up immediately with paint (Škoda painting pen) **before** any corrosion can result. You can of course have this work carried out by a Škoda Service Partner.

Škoda Service Partners have a range of matching **touch-up pens** or **spray cans** available in the colour of your vehicle.

The paint number of the original paintwork of your vehicle is indicated on the vehicle data sticker ⇒ page 255.

Any corrosion which has already have formed must be removed thoroughly. Apply a **corrosion protection primer** and then the paint to the affected point. You can of course have this work carried out by a Škoda Service Partner. ■

Plastic parts

External plastic parts are cleaned by normal washing. Plastic parts and synthetic leather can also be treated with **special solvent-free plastic cleaning agents** if a damp cloth is not sufficient. Paint care products are not suitable for plastic parts.

Caution

Solvent-free cleaners attack the material and can damage it. ■

Windows

Only use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors. You should not move the ice scraper forward and backward but in one direction on the window which you are cleaning in order to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.

You can best remove residues of rubber, oil, grease, wax or silicone by using a special window cleaner or a special silicone remover.

You should also clean the windows regularly from the inside.

Do not use window leathers which you have used to polish the vehicle body to dry off the windows. Residues of preservatives in the window leather can dirty the window and reduce visibility.

Do not affix any stickers over the inside of the rear window to avoid damage to the **heating elements of the rear window heater**.

We recommend using a preservative from Škoda genuine accessories offered by your Škoda dealer.

Caution

Never remove snow or ice from the glass parts with warm or hot water - risk of formation of cracks in the glass! ■

The headlight lenses

Please do not use any aggressive cleaning or chemical solvent products - risk of damage to the plastic lenses **Please use** soap and clean warm water.

Caution

Never wipe the headlights dry and do not use any sharp objects for cleaning the plastic lenses, this may result in damage to the protective paintwork and consequently in formation of cracks on the headlight lenses, e.g through effect of chemical products. ■

Door and window seals

The rubber seals on the doors, boot lid, bonnet and windows remain supple and last longer if you treat them from time to time with a rubber care product (e.g. with a spray with silicone-free oil). You also avoid premature wear of the seals and prevent leakages in this way. It is also easier to open the doors. Rubber seals which are well cared for also do not stick together in cold winter weather. ■

Locks

We recommend that you use the spray from Škoda original accessories with regreasing and anticorrosive effect for de-icing locks.

Note

When washing your vehicle, ensure that as little water as possible gets into the locks. ■

Wheels

Steel wheels

You should also thoroughly wash the wheels and wheel trims when giving your vehicle its regular wash. This prevents any brake dust, dirt and road salt from sticking to the wheel hubs. You can remove stubborn brake abrasion adhering to the wheels with an industrial cleaner. Touch up any damage to the paintwork on the wheels before rust is able to form.

Light alloy wheels

Regular care of light alloy wheels is necessary in order to retain their decorative appearance over long periods. It is particularly important to remove any road salt and brake abrasion from light alloy wheels every two weeks, otherwise the surface will suffer. Wash thoroughly and then treat the wheels with a protective product for light alloy wheels which does not contain any acidic components. You should provide the wheel hubs with a hard wax layer every three months. You must not use any products which cause abrasion when treating the wheel hubs. Any damage to the paint layer on the wheel hubs must be touched up immediately.

We recommend using a preservative from Škoda genuine accessories offered by your Škoda dealer.

WARNING

One should remember when cleaning the wheels that moisture, ice and road salt may adversely affect braking efficiency – risk of an accident!

Note

Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt. ■

Underbody protection

The underside of your vehicle is protected for life against chemical and mechanical influences.

One cannot, however, completely rule out damage to the **protective layer** when driving so we recommend that you inspect the protective layer on the underside of your vehicle and on the chassis at certain intervals - this is best done at the beginning and end of the winter - and to touch up any damaged areas.

Škoda Service Partners have suitable **spray products** available as well as the necessary equipment and are familiar with the instructions for use. It is therefore best to have such touch-up work or additional corrosion protection measures carried out by a Škoda Service Partner.

WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or corrosion-protection agents for the exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filter or heat shields. When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances might ignite – risk of fire! ■

Protection of hollow spaces

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

This wax protection does not require to be inspected or re-treated. Please remove any small amount of wax which flows out of the cavities at high temperatures with a plastic scraper and clean the spot using petroleum cleaner.

WARNING

Safety and environmental protection regulations should observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax – a risk of fire! ■

Engine compartment

Good corrosion protection is very important, particularly in winter when one often drives over its salt-strewn roads. One should therefore clean the whole engine compartment before and after the salt spreading period and treat with preservative in order to prevent the salt from being destructive.

Škoda Service Partners have the cleaning agents and preservatives recommended by the manufacturer and also the required equipment.

WARNING

- **It is necessary to observe the guidelines given in the chapter before working on the engine compartment ⇒ page 209, "Working in the engine compartment".**
- **Let the engine cool down before cleaning the engine compartment.**

Caution

- Engine cleaning may be only be undertaken when the ignition is off.
- It is recommended to cover the generator before washing the engine compartment.

For the sake of the environment

The dirty water produced by washing the engine has washed away petrol, and residues of grease and oil and should therefore be cleaned by an oil separator. This is why engine washing should only be undertaken in a specialist garage or at a fueling station (when these are fitted with the required equipment). ■

Care of the interior of vehicle

Plastic parts, artificial leather and cloths

You can clean plastic parts and artificial leather with a moist cloth. You should only treat such parts with special **solvent-free plastic cleaning and care products** it does prove to be adequate.

Upholstery cloth and cloth trim on the doors, luggage compartment cover, headliner etc. are best treated with special cleaning products, using if necessary a **dry foam** and a soft sponge or brush.

We recommend using a cleaning product from Škoda genuine accessories offered by your Škoda dealer.

Caution

Solvent-free cleaners attack the material and can damage it. ■

Fabric covers of electrically heated seats

Do **not clean** the seat covers moist as this may result in damage to the seat heating system.

Clean such covers using special agents, for example dry foam. ■

Natural leather

Natural leather requires quite particular care and attention.

Leather should be treated from time to time according the following guidelines depending on how much it is used.

Normal cleaning

– Clean soiled areas of the leather with slightly moistened cotton or woollen cloth.

Severe soiling

- Clean severely soiled areas with a cloth dipped in a mild soapy solution (2 spoonfuls of natural soap to 1 litre of water).
- Ensure that the leather is not soaked through at any point and that no water gets into the stitching of the seams.
- Dry off the leather with a soft, dry cloth.

Removing stains

- Remove fresh stains which are **water-based** (e.g. coffee, tea, juices, blood etc.) with an absorbent cloth or household paper or use the cleaner from the care set for a stain which has already dried in.
- Remove fresh stains on a **fat base** (e.g. butter, mayonnaise, chocolate etc.) with an absorbent cloth or household cleaning paper or with the cleaner from the care set if the stain has not yet penetrated into the surface.
- Use a grease dissolver for **grease stains which have dried in**.
- Eliminate **special stains** (e.g. ball-point pens, felt pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream etc.) with a special stain remover suitable for leather.

Leather care

- Treat the leather every six months with the leather care product available from Škoda Service Partners.
- Apply only a small amount of the care product.
- Dry the leather off with a soft cloth

It is best to consult your Škoda Service Partner if you have any questions regarding cleaning and care of the leather interior.

Caution

- You must on no account treat the leather with solvents (e.g. gasoline, turpentine), floor wax, shoe cream or such like.
- Avoid leaving your vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight in order to avoid bleaching the leather. If you leave your vehicle parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from the direct rays of the sun by covering it over.
- Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface.

Note

- Use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation effect regularly and each time after cleaning the leather. The cream nourishes the leather, allows it to breathe and keeps it supple and also provides moisture. It also creates surface protection.
- Clean the leather every 2 to 3 months, remove fresh soiling each time this occurs.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe cream etc., as quickly as possible.
- Care also for the leather dye. Refreshen areas which have lost their colour with a special coloured leather cream as required.
- The leather is a natural material with specific properties. During the use of the vehicle, small optical changes can occur on the leather parts of the covers (e. g wrinkles as a result of the stress of the covers). ■

Seat belts

- Keep the seat belts clean!
- Wash seat belts which have become soiled using a mild soapy solution.
- Inspect the seat belts regularly to ensure they are in good condition.

Belt webbing which has become severely soiled may prevent the inertia reel from reeling up the belt properly.

WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts chemically as dry cleaning may destroy the fabric. The seat belts must also not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (such as acids etc.).
- Seat belts which have damage to the webbing, the connections, the inertia reel or the lock should be replaced by a Škoda Service Partner.
- Inertia reel belts must be completely dried before being reeled up. ■

Fuel

Petrol

Grades of petrol

There are various grades of petrol. Please read ⇒ page 255, “Technical Data” in order to know which grade of petrol your vehicle requires. You will also find the same information affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap of your vehicle ⇒ page 206, fig. 184.

A distinction is made between unleaded and leaded petrol. All Škoda vehicles with petrol engines are equipped with a catalytic converter and must therefore be only driven with **unleaded petrol**. Unleaded petrol complies with the **standard DIN EN 228**.

The individual grades of petrol are distinguished by their **octane number** (RON). Please adopt the following procedure if the grade of petrol which you normally use is not be available in exceptional circumstances.

- Engines which need **unleaded premium petrol 95 RON** can also be run on unleaded regular petrol 91 RON. This does, however, result in a slight loss in performance.

If, in an emergency, the only fuel available is one which has a lower octane number than that required by the engine then only drive at medium engine speeds and lower engine loadings.

You can make unlimited use of fuel which has a higher octane number than that required by the engine. There will, however, be no advantages gained by this in terms of engine performance and fuel consumption!

The handling, performance and life of your engine are determined to a significant extent by the quality of the fuel. Do not use any petrol additives. **Use a fuel complying with the standard.**

You can find further information on refuelling ⇒ page 206, “Refuelling”.

Caution

- Filling the tank even only once with leaded petrol will result in the catalytic converter being destroyed.
- Operating the engine with petrol of a low octane number can result in engine damage at high revolutions or severe engine loading. ■

Diesel

Diesel fuel

Your vehicle can be operated with **diesel fuel**, which complies with the standard **DIN EN 590**.

Fuel additives

You must not use fuel additives, so-called “flow improvers” (petrol and similar products) in diesel fuel.

If the quality of the diesel fuel is poor, it is then necessary to drain the **fuel filter** more often than stated in the Service schedule.

You can find information on refuelling ⇒ page 206, “Refuelling”.

Caution

- Use a fuel which complies with the standard **DIN EN 590**. Filling the tank even only once, which does not comply with the standard, can result in damage to the fuel system.
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can result in engine problems.
- Your vehicle is not adapted for use of biofuel (RME), therefore this fuel must not be refuelled and driven. Using this fuel (RME) can lead to damage to the engine or the fuel system. ■

Operation in winter

Winter-grade diesel fuel

A different grade of diesel fuel is available at filling stations in winter than during the summer. Using "summer-grade diesel fuel" at temperatures below 0°C can result in operational problems because the diesel becomes viscous as a result of paraffin separation.

It is therefore the case that DIN EN 590 prescribes diesel fuel class for certain periods of the year which can also be purchased at the corresponding time during the year. "Winter-grade diesel fuel" will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20°C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. Škoda Service Partners and filling stations in the country concerned will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

Prewarming fuel

The vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter prewarming system. This secures operation of a vehicle using diesel fuel down to an environmental temperature of -25°C.

Caution

It is not permitted to add the various fuel additives on the market, including petrol, to diesel fuel in order to improve its flow properties. ■

Refuelling

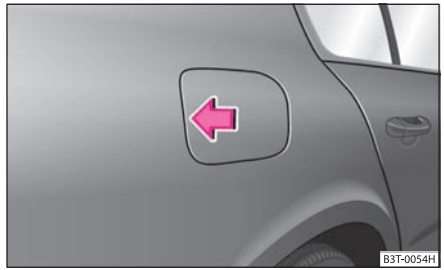

Fig. 183 Right rear side of the vehicle: Fuel filler flap

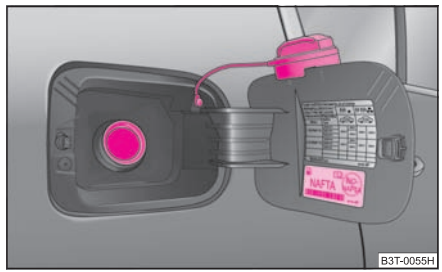

Fig. 184 Filler flap with cap unscrewed

The filler flap is automatically unlocked or locked with the central locking.

Opening the fuel filler cap

– Press onto the left side of the fuel filler flap ⇒ fig. 183.

– Unscrew the fuel filler cap anti-clockwise and place the fuel filler cap from above on the fuel filler flap ⇒ fig. 184.

Closing fuel filler cap

– Screw on the cap by turning it to the right until it is heard to lock. ▶

– Press the fuel tank flap closed.

The correct grade of fuel for your vehicle as well as the tyre size and inflation pressures are stated on a sticker affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap. Further information on fuel ⇒ page 205.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 60 litres.

WARNING

Pay attention to any legal requirements if you do carry a spare canister in the vehicle. We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. The canister can be damaged in the event of an accident and fuel may leak out.

Caution

- Before refuelling it is necessary to switch off the auxiliary heating system (auxiliary heating and ventilation) *.
- Remove any fuel which has spilled onto the paintwork of your vehicle immediately - risk of paint damage!
- Vehicles fitted with catalytic converter should never be allowed to let the fuel tank to run completely empty. An irregular supply of fuel to the engine can result in misfiring and unburnt fuel may get into the exhaust system, which may result in overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.
- Make sure that the valve is not pressed into the filler tube when inserting the pump nozzle into the filler tube. Otherwise you are unintentionally filling up the volume, which in case of heat can cause an expansion of the fuel. This can lead to an overflow of fuel or damage to parts of the fuel reservoir.
- The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Do not continue refuelling - otherwise the expansion volume is filled up. ■

Inspecting and Replenishing

Engine compartment

Bonnet remote release

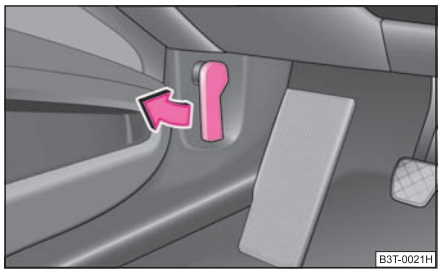

Fig. 185 Bonnet release lever

Bonnet remote release

– Pull the unlocking lever below the dash panel on the driver's side ⇒ fig. 185.

The bonnet jumps out of its lock as a result of the spring force. ■

Opening and closing the bonnet.

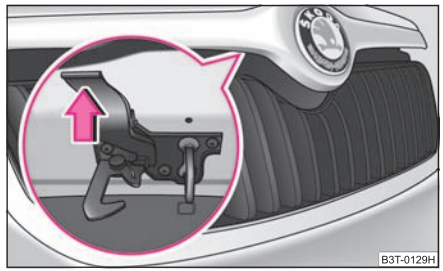

Fig. 186 Radiator grille: handle

Opening the bonnet

– Unlock the bonnet ⇒ fig. 185.

– Ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen **before opening** the bonnet otherwise damage could occur to the paintwork.

– Press the locking button ⇒ fig. 186, the bonnet unlocks itself.

– Grasp the bonnet at the bottom part of the radiator grille and lift it towards the top so that it is held opened by the gas pressure support.

Closing the bonnet

– You can overcome the force of the gas pressure support by pulling the bonnet towards the bottom.

– Allow the bonnet to drop from a height of about 30 cm into the lock - bonnet **do not press down on it**!

WARNING

- **Never open the bonnet if you see that steam or coolant is flowing out of the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait long enough until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.**
- **For safety reasons, the bonnet must always be properly closed when driving. One should therefore check that the lock has in fact engaged properly after closing the bonnet.**
- **Stop your vehicle immediately while driving if you notice that the lock is not properly engaged and close the bonnet properly – risk of an accident!**

Caution

Ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen before opening the bonnet otherwise damage could occur to the paintwork. ■

Working in the engine compartment

Particular care is required when carrying out any work in the engine compartment!

There is a risk of injuries, scalding, accidents and fire when working in the engine compartment, e.g. inspecting and replenishing oil and other fluids. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions stated below and with the general applicable rules of safety. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area ⇒ ⚠.

WARNING

- **Never open the bonnet if you see that steam or coolant is flowing out of the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait long enough until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.**
- **Switch off the engine and pull out the ignition key.**
- **Apply the handbrake firmly.**

WARNING (continued)

- **If your vehicle is fitted with a manual gearbox, move the gearshift lever into Neutral, or if it is fitted with automatic gearbox, move the selector lever into position P.**
- **Allow the engine to cool down.**
- **Keep children clear of the engine compartment.**
- **Never spill oil and other fluids over the hot engine. Such fluids (e.g. the antifreeze contained in the coolant) may ignite!**
- **Avoid short circuits in the electrical system – particularly on the battery.**
- **Never place your hand into the radiator fan as long as the engine is still warm. The fan might suddenly start running!**
- **Never open the cap of the coolant expansion bottle as long as the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!**
- **Cover over the cap of the coolant expansion reservoir with a large cloth when opening it as protection for your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.**
- **Do not let objects, such as e.g cleaning cloth or tools lie in the engine compartment.**
- **If you wish to work under the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle from rolling away and support it with suitable supporting blocks: the car jack is not sufficient for this – risk of injury!**
- **In cases where it be necessary to carry out inspection work when the engine is running there is an additional risk from rotating parts (e.g. the V-ribbed belt, alternator, radiator fan) and from the high-voltage ignition system. Please observe in addition the following.**
  - **Never touch the electrical cables of the ignition system.**
  - **Absolutely avoid any jewellery, loose items of clothing or long hair from getting into the rotating parts of the engine – Hazard! Therefore remove any jewellery beforehand, tie up your hair and wear tight fitting clothing.**
- **Please also comply with the warning instructions stated below when carrying out any essential work on the fuel system or on the electrical system.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Always separate the car battery from the electrical system.**
- **Do not smoke.**
- **Never carry out any work close to naked flames.**
- **Always keep a working fire extinguisher at hand.**

Caution

When replenishing fluids in the engine, always ensure that the fluids are on no account mixed up. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage! ■

Overview of the engine compartment

The main inspection points

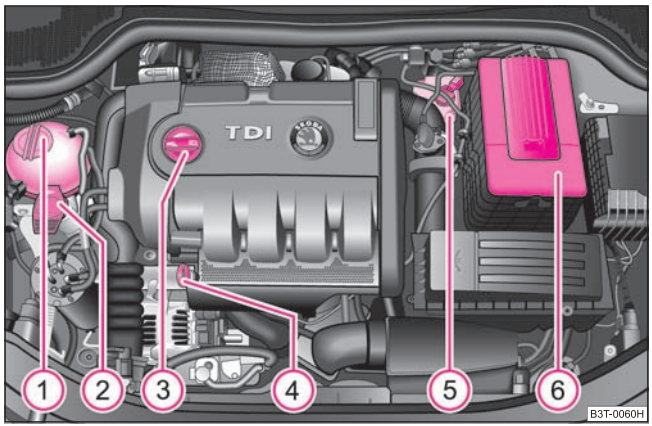

Fig. 187 Diesel engine 1.9 litre/77 kW

1 Coolant expansion bottle 214
2 Windshield washer fluid reservoir 220
3 Engine oil filler opening 212
4 Engine oil dipstick 211
5 Brake fluid reservoir 215
6 Battery (below a cover) 216

Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical. ■

Engine oil

Engine oil specifications

The grade of engine oil should be selected in accordance with precise specifications.

The engine of your vehicle has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil which you can use throughout the year - except in extreme climatic regions.

You can mix various oils together with each other when refilling with oil. This does not, however, apply for models with flexible service intervals (QG1).

Engine oils are, of course, undergoing continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

Škoda Service Partners are informed by Škoda Auto a.s. about current changes. This why you should always have engine oil changed by your Škoda Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following must be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle. ▶

Engine oil specifications for vehicles with fixed service intervals (QG2)

	Engine oil specifications
Petrol engines	VW 502 00 VW 504 00 ACEA A2[a], or A3[a]
Diesel engines	VW 505 00[b] VW 505 01[c] VW 507 00[d] ACEA B3[d], or B4[a]

a) Only to be used in exceptional cases if the oils specified above are not available.
b) Only for the engine 2.0 l/125 kW TDI CR
c) Only for engines without diesel particle filter ⇒ page 28.
d) Only for engines diesel particle filter ⇒ page 28 and for the engine 2.0 l/125 kW TDI CR.

Engine oil specifications for models with flexible service intervals (QG1)

	Engine oil specifications
Petrol engines	VW 503 00[a] VW 504 00
Diesel engines	VW 506 01[b] VW 507 00

a) Only for the engine 1.4 l/92 kW TSI
b) Only for engines without diesel particle filter ⇒ page 28.

Caution

Only the above-mentioned oils may be used on vehicles with flexible service intervals (QG1). We recommend always refilling with oil of the same specification since this will maintain the properties of the oil. In exceptional cases, you must top up only once engine oil complying with Specification VW 502 00 (only for petrol engines) or Specification VW 505 01 (only for diesel engines) to maximum 0.5 litres. You must not use other engine oils - risk of engine damage!

Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle. Consequently, you will always have the correct engine oil for refilling.
- We recommend using a preservative from the Škoda original accessories offered by your Škoda dealer.
- For further information - see Service shedule. ■

Check engine oil level

The dipstick indicates the level of oil in the engine.

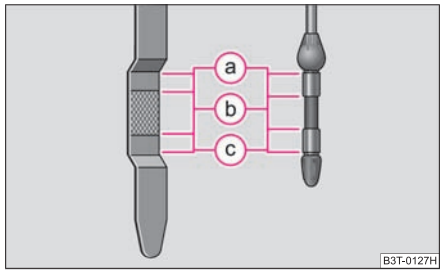

Fig. 188 Dipstick

Checking the oil level

- Park the vehicle on a horizontal surface.
- Switch the engine off.
- Open the bonnet ⇒ page 209.
- Wait a few minutes and pull out the oil dipstick.
- Wipe off the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again fully.
- Then withdraw the dipstick again and read off the oil level.

Oil level within range (a)

– You must **not** top up the oil.

Oil level within range (b)

– You **may** top up the oil. It is possible that the oil level may then be within range (a) after doing this.

Oil level within range (c)

– You **must** top up the oil ⇒ page 212. It is sufficient, once this is done, to keep the oil level is within range (b).

It is normal for the engine to consume oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l/1 000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. The oil consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 kilometres.

One should therefore check the oil level at regular intervals, preferably every time after the fuel tank is filled or after driving for long stretches.

We recommend maintaining the oil level within the range (a) if the engine has been operating at high loads, for example during a lengthy motorway trip during the summer months, towing a trailer or negotiating a high mountain pass, **but not above this**.

The warning light in the instrument cluster* will indicate ⇒ page 35, "Engine oil level* ⛍" whether the oil level is too low. In this case, check the oil level as soon as possible. Top up with an appropriate quantity of oil.

Caution

- The oil level must on no account extend beyond the range (a). Danger of damaging the catalytic converter.
- **Do not continue your journey** if for some reason it is not possible under the conditions prevailing to top up with oil. **Switch of the engine and contact** and obtain professional assistance from a specialist garage. ■

Replenishing engine oil

– Inspecting the engine oil level ⇒ page 211.

– Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening.

– Pour in a suitable grade of oil in portions of 0.5 litres ⇒ page 210.

– Inspect the oil level ⇒ page 211, "Check engine oil level".

– Carefully screw on the cap of the filler opening and push the dipstick in fully.

WARNING

- **Avoid dripping oil onto hot parts of the engine when topping up will oil – a risk of fire!**
- **Read and observe the warning notes ⇒ page 209, "Working in the engine compartment" before working in the engine compartment.**

For the sake of the environment

The oil level must on no account be above the range (a) ⇒ page 211. Oil will otherwise be drawn in through the crankcase ventilation and may pass through the exhaust system to atmosphere. The oil may combust in the catalytic converter and damage it. ■

Changing engine oil

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals stated in the Service schedule or according to the service interval indicator ⇒ page 12, "Service Interval Display".

WARNING

- **Only carry out the engine oil change, if you have the required professional knowledge!**

WARNING (continued)

- **Read and observe the warning notes ⇒ page 209, "Working in the engine compartment" before working in the engine compartment.**
- **Let the engine cool down – risk of burning from hot oil.**
- **Wear an eye protection – risk of caustic burns due to oil splashes.**
- **Oil is toxic! Store old oil in a safe place out of the reach of children and unauthorized persons until you dispose of it properly.**

Caution

You must not pour any additives into the engine oil – risk of engine damage! Damage, which results from such product, are excluded from the warranty.

For the sake of the environment

- You must on no account pour oil into the ground or into the sewage system.
- In view of the problems involved in properly disposing of old oil, the material, equipment and the knowledge required for such work, we recommend that you have the oil and oil filter change carried out by your Škoda Service Partner.

Note

After your skin has come in contact with the oil, you must thoroughly wash your skin. ■

Cooling system

Coolant

The job of the coolant is to cool the engine.

The cooling system does not require any maintenance under normal operating conditions. The coolant consists of water with a concentration of coolant additive of 40 %. This mixture not only provides antifreeze protection down to -25°C but also protects the cooling and heating system from corrosion. It also prevents the formation of scale and significantly increases the boiling point of the coolant.

You must therefore not reduce the concentration of antifreeze agent in the coolant by adding water, also not during the summer months or in countries with a warm climate. **The concentration of coolant additive in the coolant must be at least 40%.**

You can increase the amount of antifreeze in the coolant if a higher concentration of antifreeze is necessary for climatic reasons but only up to 60% (antifreeze protection down to approx. -40°C). The antifreeze protection tails off above that concentration.

Vehicles exported to countries with a cold climate (e.g. Sweden, Norway, Finland) are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -35°C. In these countries the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 50 %.

Coolant

The cooling system is filled at the works with coolant (purple in colour), which complies with the specification TL-VW 774 F.

We recommend that you use the same coolant additive - G12 PLUS (purple in colour).

Please contact your Škoda Service Partner if you have any questions regarding the coolant or if you wish to fill up with a different coolant.

Your Škoda Service Partner can also supply you with the correct coolant additives.

Caution

- **Other coolant additives may cause operational problems which, in particular, involves significantly reducing the anticorrosion effect.**
- **Any faults or problems resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and, as a consequence of this, result in major engine damage.** ■

Inspecting the coolant level

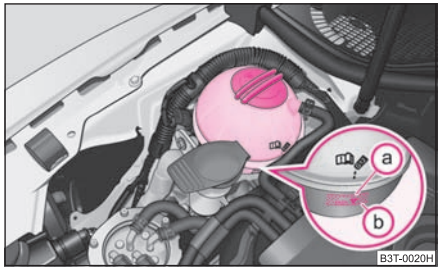

Fig. 189 Engine compartment: Coolant expansion bottle

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment on the right.

- Switch the engine off.
- Open the bonnet ⇒ page 209, “Working in the engine compartment”.
- Check the level of coolant in the coolant expansion bottle ⇒ fig. 189. The coolant level when the engine is cold must lie between the (b) (MIN) and (a) (MAX) markings. The level may also rise slightly above the (a) (MAX) marking when the engine is warm.

If the coolant level in the reservoir is too low, this is indicated by the warning light in the instrument cluster ⇒ page 31. We nevertheless recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Loss of coolant

A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the system. You should not merely top up the coolant in the reservoir. It is also important to have the cooling system inspected without delay by a specialist garage.

Losses can only occur through the pressure relief in the cap of the coolant expansion bottle which is completely free of leaks if the coolant boils as a result of overheating and is forced out of the cooling system.

WARNING

Read and observe the warning notes ⇒ page 209, “Working in the engine compartment” before working in the engine compartment.

Caution

One should contact a specialist garage as soon as possible if the source of overheating itself cannot be determined and removed, since there may be grave damage to the engine. ■

Replenishing the coolant

- Switch the engine off.
- Allow the engine to cool down.
- Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion reservoir ⇒ fig. 189 and unscrew the cap **carefully** by turning it to the left ⇒ ⚠.
- Top up the coolant.
- Screw the cap tight until it is heard to lock.

The coolant which you use for replenishing the system, must comply with one specific specification ⇒ page 213, “Coolant”. Do not use an alternative additive if the coolant additive G12 PLUS is not available in exceptional cases. Just top up the system with water and as soon as possible arrange adjustment to correct the mixing ratio of water and coolant additive again by a specialist garage.

Only use fresh coolant for topping up the system.

Do not fill up over the “MAX” marking! Excess coolant which is heated up is forced out of the cooling system through the pressure relief valve in the cap of the coolant compensation bottle.

Wait until the engine has cooled down for a system which has suffered a major loss of coolant before pouring in coolant. This is necessary to avoid engine damage. ▶

WARNING

- **The cooling system is pressurized! Do not open the cap of the coolant expansion bottle if the engine is still hot – risk of scalding!**
- **The coolant additive and thus all of the coolant is harmful to your health. Avoid contact with the coolant. Coolant vapours are also harmful to the health. It is important, therefore, to always safely store any coolant additive in its original container out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!**
- **If any splashes of coolant get into your eyes, rinse out your eyes immediately with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.**
- **You should also consult a doctor without delay if you have inadvertently swallowed coolant.**

Caution

Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible under the conditions prevailing to top up with coolant. Switch of the engine and contact and obtain professional assistance from a specialist garage.

For the sake of the environment

Do not re-use coolant if it is necessary to drain the coolant in the system. It should be collected and disposed of in compliance with environmental protection regulations. ■

Radiator fan

The radiator fan may switch on suddenly.

The radiator fan is driven by an electric motor and controlled according to the coolant temperature.

The radiator fan may continue running for up to 10 minutes after the engine has been switched off - even if the ignition is also off. It may also switch on suddenly after a certain time, if

- the coolant temperature has risen because of an accumulation of heat or
- the warm engine compartment is heated up additionally by strong sunlight.

WARNING

You must therefore be aware when working in the engine compartment that the fan may switch on suddenly – risk of injury! ■

Brake fluid

Inspecting the brake fluid level

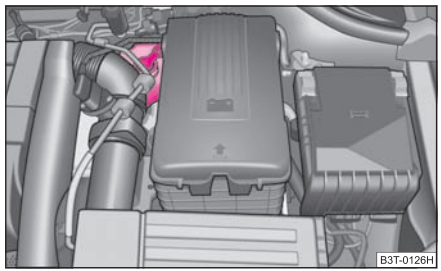

Fig. 190 Engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir

The brake fluid reservoir is located on the left of the engine compartment. The brake fluid reservoir on right-hand steering models is positioned on the other side of the engine compartment.

– Switch the engine off.

– Open the bonnet ⇒ page 209, “Working in the engine compartment”.

– Inspect the brake fluid level in the reservoir ⇒ fig. 190. The level must be between the “MIN” and “MAX” markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results when driving due to normal wear-and-tear and automatic adjustment of the brake pads, and is perfectly normal.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking. A situation where the brake fluid level is too low is indicated by the warning light (!) lighting up in the instrument cluster ⇒ page 34. In this case **stop immediately and do not drive any further! Obtain professional assistance.**

WARNING

- **Read and observe the warning notes ⇒ page 209 before working in the engine compartment.**
- **If the fluid level has dropped below the MIN marking, do not drive any further – risk of accident! Contact a Škoda dealer to obtain professional assistance.** ■

Replacing brake fluid

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. This causes the fluid to absorb moisture from the surrounding air over a period of time. Excessive water in the brake fluid may be the cause of corrosion in the brake system. The water content also lowers the boiling point of the brake fluid. **This is why brake fluid must be replaced every two years.**

One may only use new genuine brake fluid from Škoda Auto a.s. The specification for the brake fluid is "FMVSS 116 DOT 4".

We recommend that you have the brake fluid replaced by a **Škoda Service Partner** as part of an Inspection Service.

WARNING

- **Using old brake fluid can result in severe stress on the brakes because of the formation of vapour bubbles in the brake system. This greatly impairs the braking efficiency and thus also the safety of your vehicle.**
- **Brake fluid is toxic! It must therefore be kept safely in closed original containers and well away from children and unauthorized persons.**

Caution

Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

In view of the problems involved with proper disposal of brake fluid, the special tools and the professional knowledge required, you should have the brake fluid replaced by a Škoda Service Partner. ■

Battery

Working on the battery

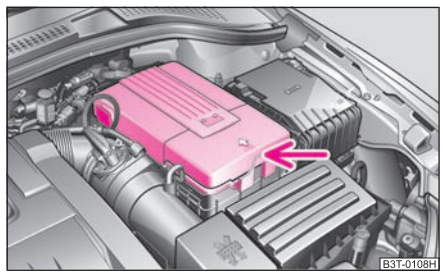

Fig. 191 Engine compartment: The battery

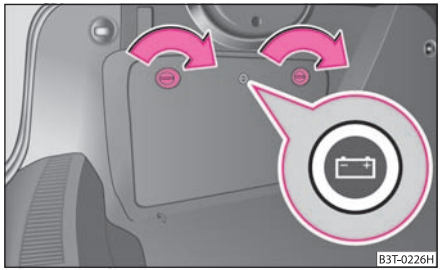

Fig. 192 Luggage compartment: Battery behind the cover

The battery is located in a plastic housing in the engine compartment or in the left side of the luggage compartment.

Battery in the engine compartment

– Press the interlock on the side of the battery cover ⇒ page 216, fig. 191, fold the battery cover out and pull it out.

– The installation of the battery cover takes place in the reverse order.

Battery in the luggage compartment

– You can open the compartment with the symbol by turning the securing pins e. g with a coin or using a flat screwdriver in direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 192.

Removal and installation of the battery is not recommended since it can, under certain circumstances, lead to major damage. Contact a specialist garage.

There is a risk of injuries, scalding, accidents and burns when carrying out any work on the battery and on the electrical system. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions ⇒ ⚠ stated below and with the general applicable rules of safety.

⚠ WARNING

- **The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care. Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling batteries. Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs. Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and creates deep wounds after contact with the skin which take a long time to heal. Repeated contact with diluted acids causes skin diseases (inflammations, ulcers, slin cracks). Acids coming into contact with water are diluted accompanied by significant development of heat.**
- **Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings. Protect the eyes with safety glasses or a shield! There is the danger of suffering blindness! If any battery electrolyte gets into your eye, rinse out your eye immediately with clear water for several minutes. Contact a doctor without delay.**
- **Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water. Contact a doctor immediately if you swallow battery electrolyte.**
- **Keep batteries out of the reach of children.**
- **Hydrogen is released when you charge a battery and a highly explosive gas mixture is produced. An explosion can be caused through sparkling over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.**
- **Bridging of the poles will create a short circuit (e.g. through metal objects, cables). Possible consequences of a short circuit: Melting of lead struts, explosion and burning of the battery, jets of acid spurting out.**
- **It is prohibited to work with a naked flame and light, to smoke or to carry out any activities which produce sparks. Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.**
- **Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition as well as all electrical components and disconnect the negative cable (-) on the battery. If you wish to replace a bulb it is sufficient to switch off the appropriate light.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Never charge a frozen or thawed battery – risk of explosion and caustic burns! Replace a frozen battery.**
- **Never use a battery which is damaged – risk of explosion! Immediately replace a damaged battery.**

Caution

- You must only disconnect the battery if the ignition is switched off, otherwise the electrical system (electronic components) of the vehicle may be damaged. When disconnecting the battery from the electrical system of the vehicle, first disconnect the negative terminal (-) of the battery. Then disconnect the positive terminal (+).
- When reconnecting the battery, first connect the positive terminal (+) and only then the negative terminal (-) of the battery. You must on no account connect the cables wrongly - risk of a cable fire.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the vehicle body otherwise damage could occur to the paintwork.
- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.

For the sake of the environment

A removed battery is a special type of waste which is harmful to the environment - contact your specialist garage regarding disposing of the battery.

Note

Please also refer to the guidelines ⇒ page 220, also after connecting the battery. ■

Battery with a charge level indicator, the so-called magic eye

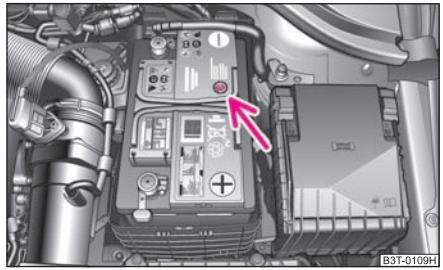

Fig. 193 Battery with a charge level indicator

There is a so-called magic eye ⇒ fig. 193 located on the top of the battery. The "magic eye" changes its colour in line with the charge state of and electrolyte level in the battery.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the "magic eye". For this reason carefully knock on the "magic eye" before carrying out the check.

- Green colour - the battery is adequately charged.
- Dark colour - the battery has to be charged
- Colourless or yellow colour - have the battery checked by a Škoda dealer.

Batteries, which are more than 5 years old, must be replaced. We recommend you have the electrolyte level inspected and adjusted to the correct level or the battery replaced if necessary by a Škoda Service Partner.

Caution

If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge because certain electrical components consume electricity (e.g. control units) also in idle state. You can prevent the discharging of the battery by disconnecting the negative terminal or charging the battery constantly with a very low charging current. Please also refer to the notes when working on the battery ⇒ page 216, "Working on the battery". ■

Inspecting the electrolyte level

The battery is practically **maintenance-free** under normal operating conditions. We do, however, recommend that you have the electrolyte level inspected from time to time by a Škoda Service Partner when outside temperatures are high or when driving on long trips. You should also check the electrolyte level ⇒ page 219 each time the battery is charged.

The battery acid level will also be checked as part of the Inspection Service. ■

Operation in winter

The battery has to provide greater amounts of electricity during the winter. It also has only part of the initial power output at low temperatures that it has at normal temperatures.

A discharged battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0°C.

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked by a Škoda dealer before the start of the winter, and recharged if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

Never charge a frozen or thawed battery – risk of explosion and caustic burns. Replace a frozen battery. ■

Charging the battery

A properly charged battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

- Read the warning notes ⇒ ⚠ in "Working on the battery" on page 216 and ⇒ ⚠.
- Switch the ignition and all electrical components off.
- Only for "quick-charging": Disconnect both battery cables (first of all "negative", then "positive").
- Carefully attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
- You can now plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the charger.
- When charging is completed: switch the charger off and unplug the mains cable from the power socket.
- Only then should you disconnect the terminal clamps of the charger.
- Reconnect the cables to the battery (first of all "positive", then "negative").

It is not normally necessary to disconnect the cables of the battery if you recharge the battery using low amperages (as for example from a **mini-charger**). Please also refer to the instructions from the charger manufacturer.

A charging current of 0.1 of the total battery capacity (or lower) is that which should be used until full charging is achieved.

It is, however, necessary to disconnect both cables before charging the battery with high amperages, so-called "**quick-charging**".

"Quick-charging" a battery is **dangerous** ⇒ ⚠ in "Working on the battery" on page 216. It requires a special charger and appropriate knowledge. We therefore recommend that you have your battery quick-charged only by your Škoda Service Partner.

A discharged battery may already **freeze** at temperatures just below 0°C ⇒ ⚠. We recommend that you no longer use a battery which has thawed out because the casing of the battery may be cracked through the formation of ice and this would allow battery electrolyte to flow out.

The vent plugs of the battery should not be opened for charging.

⚠ WARNING

Never charge a frozen or thawed battery – risk of explosion and caustic burns. Replace a frozen battery. ■

Disconnecting and reconnecting the battery

On disconnecting and reconnecting the battery the following functions are initially deactivated or are no longer able to operate fault-free.

Operation	Operating measure
Electrical power window (operational faults)	⇒ page 49
Enter radio code number	see Radio Operating Instructions
Set hours	⇒ page 14
Data in the multi-functional indicator* are deleted.	⇒ page 14

We recommend having the vehicle checked by a Škoda Service Partner to ensure full functionality of all electrical systems. ■

Replacing the battery

You should only replace a battery with a new battery of the same capacity, voltage (12 V), amperage and of the same size. Škoda Service Partners have a range of suitable batteries available.

We recommend that you only have an old battery disposed of by your Škoda dealer since it does require special disposal.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries contain poisonous substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with local environmental protection regulations and on no account as domestic waste. ■

Windshield washer system

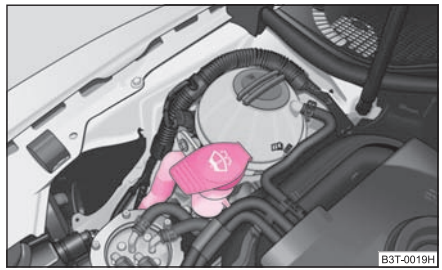

Fig. 194 Engine compartment: Windshield washer fluid reservoir

The windshield washer reservoir contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen or rear window and for the headlamp cleaning system*. The reservoir is located at the front right of the engine compartment ⇒ fig. 194.

The **filling level** of the container is 3 litres, 5.5 litres on vehicles which also have a headlight washing system.

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We therefore recommend using clean washing water together with the screen cleaner from Škoda genuine accessories (in winter additionally with antifreeze) which is capable of removing stubborn dirt. Follow the instructions for use on the packaging when using screen cleaning products.

You should always add antifreeze to the cleaning water in winter even if your vehicle is fitted with heated windscreen washer nozzles*.

It is also possible in exceptional cases to use methylated spirits when no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. Please note, however, that the antifreeze protection at this concentration is only adequate down to -5°C.

WARNING

Read and observe the warning notes ⇒ page 209, "Working in the engine compartment" before working in the engine compartment.

Caution

- On no account should you add radiator antifreeze or other additives to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with headlight cleaning system, you should only add cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights to the windscreen washer fluid. Please contact your Škoda Service Partner, who will tell you which cleaning agent you can use. ■

Wheels and Tyres

Wheels

General information

- New tyres do not offer optimal grip at first and should therefore be run in for about 500 km at a moderate speed and an appropriately cautious style of driving. You will also profit from longer tyre life.
- The tread depth of new tyres may differ because of design features and the configuration of the tread (depending on the type of tyre and the manufacturer).
- Drive over curbs on the side of the road and other such obstacles slowly and, where possible, at a right angles in order to avoid damage to tyres and wheel trims.
- Inspect your tyres from time to time for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges). Remove foreign bodies from the tyre profile.
- Damage to tyres and wheels is frequently not visible. Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. **Please reduce your speed immediately and stop if you suspect that a wheel is damaged.** Inspect the tyres for signs of damage (bulges, splits, etc.) If no visible damage is present, please drive at an appropriately slow speed and carefully to the nearest specialist garage in order to have your vehicle inspected.
- Also protect your tyres from contact with oil, grease and fuel.
- Immediately replace any dust caps of the valves which have got lost.
- Mark wheels before removing them so that their previous direction of running can be maintained when mounted them again.
- Always store wheels or tyres which been removed in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

Unidirectional tyres*

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by arrows on the wall of the tyre. This indicates the direction of rotation of the tyre, and it is essential that the tyres are fitted on to run in this direction. Only then are the tyres able to provide the optimal properties in terms of grip, low noise, wear-and-tear and aquaplaning.

Further information concerning the use of unidirectional tyres ⇒ page 226.

WARNING

- **New tyres during the first 500 km do not offer optimal grip and should therefore be run appropriately – risk of accident!**
- **Never drive with damaged tyres – risk of accident!**

Note

Please observe the various differing legal requirements regarding tyres. ■

Tyre life

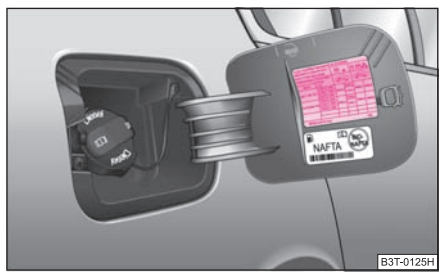

Fig. 195 An opened fuel filler flap with the tyre inflation pressure table

The life of your tyres very much depends on the following points:

Tyre pressure

The working life of tyres will be shortened considerably if the tyres are insufficiently or over-inflated and this will have an adverse effect on the handling of your vehicle.

Correctly inflated tyres are of particular importance when travelling at **high speeds**. It is therefore good to check the pressure at least once a month and also before ▶

setting off on a long trip. Please do not forget the spare wheel when checking the tyres.

The tyre inflation pressures for **summer tyres** are indicated on the inside of the fuel filler flap ⇒ page 222, fig. 195. The inflation pressures for **winter tyres** are 20 kPa (0.2 bar) higher than those for summer tyres ⇒ page 226.

The tyre pressure should be at the highest pressure specified for your vehicle at all times.

The tyre inflation pressure of the emergency spare wheel R 18 is 420 kPa (4.2 bar).

Always check the inflation pressure of tyres when cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres. Adapt the inflation pressure of the tyres accordingly if your vehicle is carrying a significantly higher payload.

Driving style

Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking (squealing tyres) increase wear-and-tear on your tyres.

Balancing wheels

The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. There are a wide range of influences when driving which may result in an imbalance and which makes themselves felt through vibration in the steering.

You should have the wheels rebalanced since any imbalance increases wear-and-tear on the steering, the suspension and tyres. A wheel must also be rebalanced when a new tyre is fitted and each time a tyre is repaired.

Wheel alignment errors

Incorrect wheel alignment at the front and rear will not only increase wear-and-tear on the tyres but will also has an adverse effect on vehicle safety. Contact your specialist garage if you notice any unusual tyre wear.

WARNING

- **If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyre must perform a greater flexing work. At higher speeds the tyre will warm up as a result of this. This can result in tread separation and even a tyre blowout.**
- **Immediately replace the damaged rims or tyres.**

For the sake of the environment

Tyres which are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption. ■

Wear indicators

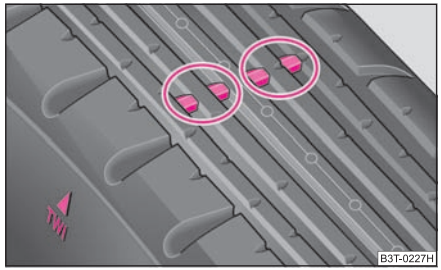

Fig. 196 Tyre tread with wear indicators

The base of the tread of the original tyres has wear indicators 1.6 mm high, installed at right angles to the direction of travel. These wear indicators are located at 6 - 8 points depending on the make and are evenly spaced around the circumference of the tyre ⇒ fig. 196. Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

A remaining tread of just 1.6 mm, measured in the grooves of the tread next to the wear indicators, means that your tyres have reached their legally permissible minimum tread depth.

WARNING

- **You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down. The legally permissible minimum tread depth should be observed.**
- **Worn tyres do not provide the necessary adhesion to the road surface at high speeds on wet roads. One could experience "aquaplaning" (uncontrolled movements of the vehicle – "swimming" on a wet road surface).** ■

Changing wheels around

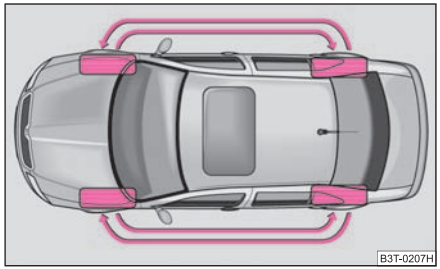

Fig. 197 Changing wheels around

If significantly greater wear is present on the front tyres, we recommend changing the front wheels around with the rear wheels as shown in the diagram ⇒ fig. 197. You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

It may be advantageous to swap the tyres over "crosswise" when certain types of wear characteristic arise on the running surface of the tyres (but not in the case of unidirectional tyres). Škoda Service Partners can provide you with details.

We recommend that you change the wheels around every 10 000 km in order to achieve even wear on all wheels and to obtain optimal tyre life. ■

New tyres and wheels

Tyres and wheel rims are important design elements. One should therefore use the tyres and wheel rims which have been released for use by Škoda Auto. They are exactly matched to the vehicle type and therefore contribute significantly to good road holding and safe driving characteristics ⇒ ⚠.

Only fit radial tyres of the same type on all 4 wheels, size (rolling circumference) and, if possible, the same tread pattern on one axle.

The Škoda Service Partners have access to the most current information about which tyres we have released for use on your vehicle.

We recommend that you have any work relating to tyres or wheels carried out by your **Škoda Service Partner**. Your dealer has all of the necessary special tools and replacement parts available plus the required specialist knowledge and is also in a position to properly dispose of the old tyres. A large number of Škoda Service Partners also have an attractive range of tyres and wheels available.

The tyre/wheel combinations which are approved for your vehicle are indicated in your vehicle documents. Approval and licensing may differ according to the legislation prevailing in individual countries.

Proper knowledge of the tyre data makes it easier for you to select the correct type of tyre. Tyres do, for example, have the following **inscription** on their walls:

205 / 55 R 16 94 V

What this means is:

205	Tyre width in mm
55	Height/width ratio in %
R	Code letter for the type of tyre - **R** adial
16	Diameter of wheel in inches
94	Load index
V	Speed symbol

The following **speed restrictions** apply to tyres.

Speed symbol	Permissible maximum speed
S	180 km/h
T	190 km/h
H	210 km/h
V	240 km/h
W	270 km/h
Y	300 km/h

The date of manufacture is also stated on the tyre wall (possibly only on the *inside* of wheel):

DOT ... 20 08...

means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 20th week of the year 2008.

Any **spare wheel** which differs from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres) should only be used only for a short time in the event of a puncture and when adopting an appropriately cautious style of driving. It should be replaced as quickly as possible by a normal wheel.

WARNING

- **Only use those tyres or wheel rims which have been approved for your model of Škoda Auto a.s. vehicle. Failure to observe this instruction will adversely affect the road safety of your vehicle – risk of accident! Approval and licencing of your vehicle on public roads may also become void as a result.**
- **You must on no account drive at a higher speed than is permissible for your tyres – risk of an accident resulting from tyre damage and loss of control over your vehicle.**
- **Tyres which are 6 years old or more should only be fitted in exceptional cases and when adopting an appropriately cautious style of driving.**
- **Never fit tyres which have already been used without having adequate knowledge of their previous history. Tyres age even if they have not been used at all or only very little. A spare tyre must only be used in exceptional cases and only then when adopting an appropriately cautious style of driving.**
- **Do not, where possible, replace individual tyres but at least replace them on both wheels of a given axle at the same time. Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.**

For the sake of the environment

Old tyres must be disposed of in conformity with the appropriate regulations.

Note

It is not normally possible to fit wheels from other models of cars for technical reasons. This may also apply in certain circumstances to the wheels of the same type of vehicle. ■

Wheel bolts

Wheels and **wheel bolts** are matched to each other in terms of design. Each time you fit other wheels - e.g. light alloy wheels or wheels with winter tyres - you must therefore also use the matching wheel bolts of the correct length and shape of spherical cap. This is essential to ensure that the wheels are tightly fitted and that the brake system operates properly.

If you retrofit **wheel trims** (or have this done), please also ensure that an adequate flow of air remains assured for cooling the brake system.

The Škoda Service Partners are instructed in the technical possibilities which exist regarding converting or retrofitting wheels, tyres and wheel trim.

WARNING

- **In case of incorrect treatment of the wheel bolts, the wheel can loosen when the car is moving – risk of accident!**
- **The wheel bolts must be clean and must turn easily. However, they must never be treated with grease or oil.**
- **If the wheel bolts are tightened to a too low tightening torque, the rim can lossen when the car is moving – risk of accident! A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rims.**

Caution

The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm. ■

Winter tyres

The handling of your vehicle will be significantly improved when driving on wintry roads if you fit winter tyres. Summer tyres do not offer the same grip on ice, snow and at temperatures below 7 °C because of their construction (width, rubber blend, tread pattern). This particularly applies to vehicles which are equipped with **low-profile tyres** or **high-speed tyres** (code index H or V on wall of tyre).

Winter tyres must be mounted on all four wheels to obtain the best handling characteristics.

You must only fit those types of winter tyre which are approved for your vehicle. The permissible **sizes of winter tyres** are stated in your vehicle documents. Approvals may differ because of national legislation.

Please remember that the tyres should be inflated to 20 kPa (0.2 bar) more than is the case for summer tyres ⇒ page 222, fig. 195.

Winter tyres no longer offer the same winter performance once the **tyre tread** has worn down to a depth of about 4 mm.

Ageing also causes winter tyres to lose most of their winter performance properties - even in cases where the remaining tread depth is still clearly more than 4 mm.

Speed restrictions apply to winter tyres as well as to summer tyres ⇒ page 224, ⇒ ⚠.

You can fit winter tyres of a lower speed category to your vehicle provided that you also do not drive faster than the permissible maximum speed for such tyres, even if the possible maximum speed of your vehicle is higher. The corresponding tyre category can damage the tyres when exceeding the permissible maximum speed.

Please pay attention to the notes if you decide to fit winter tyres ⇒ page 222.

You can also fit so-called “all-year tyres” instead of winter tyres.

Please contact your specialist garage if there are any points which are not clear who will be able to provide you with information regarding the maximum speed for your tyres.

⚠ WARNING

You must on no account drive your car at more than the permissible maximum speed for your winter tyres – risk of an accident resulting from tyre damage and loss of control over your car.

For the sake of the environment

Fit your summer tyres on again in good time since summer tyres offer you better grip and handling on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as ar temperatures below 7 °C - the braking distance is shorter, there is less tyre noise, tyre wear is reduced and fuel consumption is reduced.

Note

Please observe the various differing legal requirements regarding tyres. ■

Unidirectional tyres*

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**. This indicates the direction of rotation of the tyre, and it is essential that the tyres are fitted on to run in this direction. Only then are the tyres able to provide the optimal properties in terms of grip, low noise, wear-and-tear and aquaplaning.

Should it be necessary to fit on a spare wheel in exceptional cases with a tyre not dedicated to the running direction or in opposite running direction, please adopt a cautious style of driving as the tyre is no longer able to provide optimal grip and handling in such a situation. This particularly important on wet roads. Please refer to the notes ⇒ page 231, “Spare wheel”.

You should have the defective tyre replaced as soon as possible and restore the correct direction of rotation on all tyres ■

Snow chains

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels. ▶

When driving on wintry roads, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

For technical reasons, it is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations:

Wheel size	Depth (D)	Tyre size
7J x 16	45 mm	205/55
6J x 17	45 mm	205/50

Only use **fine-link snow chains**. They must not project more than 9 mm - including the chain lock.

Remove the **full wheel trims** if you wish to fit snow chains to the wheels.

Observe the national legal requirements relating to the maximum vehicle speed with snow chains.

WARNING

Please pay attention to the information in the supplied fitting instructions of the snow chain manufacturer.

Caution

You must take the chains off as soon as you drive on roads which are free of snow. They adversely affect the handling of your vehicle, damage the tyres and are rapidly destroyed.

Note

We recommend that you use snow chains from the Škoda genuine accessories. ■

Accessories, changes and replacement of parts

Accessories and replacement parts

Škoda vehicles have been built according to the latest discoveries in safety engineering. Thus one should not change the condition in which the vehicle was delivered from the manufacturer without some thought.

The following guidelines should be observed when a vehicle is to be retrofitted with accessories, have technical changes made to it or a part has to be replaced at some time in the future.

- Advise should always be obtained from a Škoda Service Partner **before** buying any accessories and **before** making any technical changes ⇒ ⚠.
- This is particularly the case when accessories are bought in a foreign country.
- Škoda Genuine Accessories which have been released for use and Skoda original parts can be obtained from Škoda Service Partners. They will install them professionally and correctly.
- All Škoda original accessory which is listed in the catalogue such as transport systems, child seats, light alloy wheels etc., are homologized.
- Radios, aerials and other electrical accessories should only be installed by an authorised workshop.
- The guidelines issued by Škoda Auto a.s. must be observed when making technical changes.
- This is to ensure that no technical damage occurs to the vehicle, that travelling and operating safety are maintained and that the chnages are permissible. Škoda Service Partners undertake this work professionally or refer it to an specialist company in special cases.

Any damage which is done caused by technical changes made without consulting a Skoda a.s. dealer is excluded from the guarantee.

⚠ WARNING

- **We advise you, in your own interest, to only use Škoda Genuine Accessories and Škoda original parts which have been expressly approved for use on**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

your Škoda. Reliability, safety and suitabiliity have been established for these Škoda original parts.

- **We cannot guarantee suitability of installation into your vehicle of other products despite keeping a constant eye on market developments (also not in the case where there is an attestation or permission can be produced).** ■

Technical changes

Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. This means that the operating safety of your vehicle can be considerably jeopardized, a greater wear of vehicle parts can occur and finally the vehicle registration documents expire.

We trust that you will understand that your Škoda Service Partner cannot be liable for damage resulting from unprofessional work.

We therefore recommend that you have all work carried out with Škoda original parts at your authorised Škoda Service Partners.

⚠ WARNING

Work or modifications on your vehicle, which have been carried out unprofessionally, can cause operational faults – risk of accident! ■

Breakdown assistance

Breakdown assistance

First-aid box*

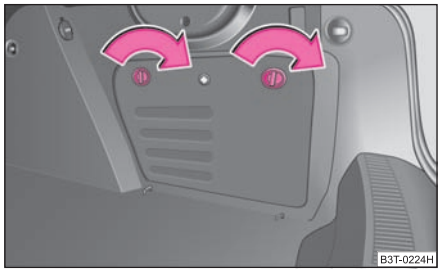

Fig. 198 Compartment for stowing first-aid box

First-aid box

The compartment for stowing the first-aid box is located in the right of the luggage compartment ⇒ fig. 198.

Note

Pay attention to the use-by-date of the contents of the first-aid box. ■

Warning triangle

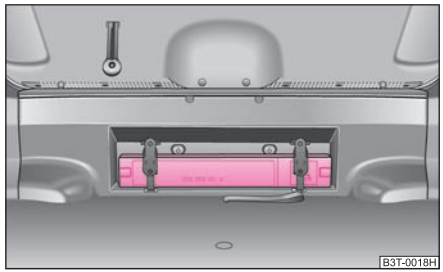

Fig. 199 Placing of the warning triangle

The warning triangle can be attached to the trim panel of the rear wall with rubber straps ⇒ fig. 199. ■

Fire extinguisher*

The fire extinguisher is attached with straps in a holder under the driver seat.

Please read carefully the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

The fire extinguisher must be checked by an authorised person or company annually (please observe the differing legal requirements).

WARNING

If the fire extinguisher is not correctly attached, in case of sudden manoeuvres or an accident it can be "thrown" through the interior compartment and cause injuries.

Note

- The fire extinguisher must comply with the relevant and valid legal requirements.
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. If the fire extinguisher is used after the expiration date, its proper function is no longer assured.
- The fire extinguisher is only supplied in certain countries within the scope of delivery. ■

Vehicle tool kit

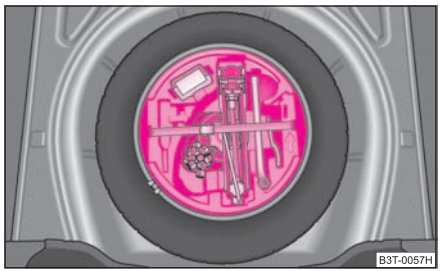

Fig. 200 Luggage compartment: Storage compartment for vehicle too kit

The vehicle tool kit and the lifting jack are stored in a locable box in the spare wheel ⇒ fig. 200. There is also space here for the removable ball for the trailer towing device*. The box is attached with a strap on the spare wheel.

The vehicle tool kit contains the following parts (depending on equipment fitted):

- Hook for pulling off a full wheel trim,
- Plastic clip for a wheel bolt cover,
- Wheel wrench,
- Towing eye,
- Adapter for the wheel bolts lock*,
- Replacement lamp,
- Torx wrench.

After using the lifting jack, screw in the arm of the lifting jack fully before placing it back in its stowage area.

WARNING

- **The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. On no account attempt to lift a heavier vehicle or other loads – risk of injury!**
- **Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely attached in the luggage compartment.**

Note

Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap. ■

Tyre repair kit*

The tyre repair kit is intended for the repair of minor tyre defects. The tyre repair kit contains a compressor, inflation bottle, operating instructions and accessories.

The repair with the tyre repair kit is **not at all intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre, this repair only serves to reach the next specialist garage. The repair can be undertaken on the vehicle immediately. **Please read the attached instructions carefully before the repair.**

The tyre repair kit is located in a textile bag. There is a velcro fastener on the underside of the bag, with which the bag is attached to the floor covering of the luggage compartment in such a way that the side of the bag rests on the right side of the luggage compartment and on the seat backrest. ■

Spare wheel

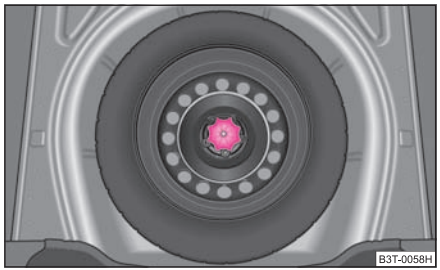

Fig. 201 Luggage compartment: Spare wheel

The spare wheel lies in a well under the floor covering of the luggage compartment and is fixed in place using special screws ⇒ fig. 201.

Before removing the spare wheel, you must take out the box with the vehicle tool kit box ⇒ page 230, fig. 200.

One should check the inflation pressure in the spare wheel (at best when generally checking the tyre air pressures - see sign on the fuel filler flap ⇒ page 222) to ensure that the spare wheel is always ready to use.

Temporary spare wheel

A warning label displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel indicates that your vehicle is equipped with a temporary spare wheel.

Please observe the following notes when driving with a temporary spare wheel:

- After fitting on the wheel, the warning sticker must not be concealed (e.g. by the wheel trim).
- Do not drive with this spare wheel at more than 80 km/h - risk of accident. Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- The inflation pressure for this spare wheel is identical to the inflation pressure of the standard tyres. The temporary spare wheel R 18 must have an inflation pressure of 420 kPa (4.2 bar)!
- Use this spare wheel only to reach the nearest specialist garage as it is not intended for continuous use.
- No other summer or winter tyres must be mounted on the rim of the spare wheel R 18. ■

Changing a wheel

Preliminary work

The following steps should be carried out before actually changing the wheel.

- If it is necessary to change a wheel, park the vehicle as far away as possible from the traffic flow. The place you choose should be **level**.
- Have **all the occupants get out.** While changing a wheel, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (e.g. behind a crash barrier).
- Apply the **handbrake** firmly.
- Engage **1st gear** or if your vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox, position the **selector lever into position P**.
- If a trailer is coupled, uncouple it.
- Take the **vehicle tool kit** ⇒ page 230 and the **spare wheel** ⇒ page 231 out of the luggage compartment.

WARNING

- **If you find yourself in flowing traffic switch on the hazard warning lights system and place the warning triangle on the side of the road at the prescribed distance from your vehicle while observing all national legal provisions. In this way you are protecting not only yourself but also other road users.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Never start the engine with the vehicle sitting on the raised jack – danger of suffering injury!**

Caution

If you have to change a wheel on a slope first block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object in order to secure the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.

Note

Comply with the national legal regulations. ■

Changing a wheel

Always change a wheel on a level surface as far as possible.

- Take off the full wheel trim* ⇒ page 233 or the caps ⇒ page 233.
- In the case of light alloy wheels remove the wheel trim cap ⇒ page 234.
- First of all slacken the theft-deterrent wheel bolt*, afterwards the other wheel bolts ⇒ page 234.
- Jack up the vehicle until the wheel to be changed is clear of the ground ⇒ page 235.
- Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper etc.).
- Take off the wheel.
- Fit on the spare wheel and tighten the wheel bolts slightly.
- Lower the car.
- Tighten the wheel bolts firmly, alternately and diagonally using the wheel wrench (crosswise) and last the theft-deterrent wheel bolt* ⇒ page 234.
- Mount the full wheel trim/wheel trim cap or the caps.

Note

- All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.
- You must never grease or oil the wheel bolts!
- When fitting on unidirectional tyres, ensure that the tyres rotate in the correct direction ⇒ page 222. ■

Subsequent steps

After changing the wheel, you must perform the following steps.

- Stow and attach the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well using the special screw ⇒ page 231, fig. 201.
- Stow the vehicle tool kit in the space provided.
- **Check** the **tyre pressure** on the spare wheel just mounted as soon as possible.
- Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible. Steel and light alloy wheels must be tightened to a tightening torque of **120 Nm**.
- Have the defective tyre repaired as soon as possible.

WARNING

It is necessary to observe the guidelines given on ⇒ page 224 if the vehicle is subsequently fitted with tyres which are different to those it was fitted with at the works.

Note

- If you find, when changing the wheel, that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn, the bolts must be replaced before checking the tightening torque.
- Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed to a workshop where the tightening torque can be checked. ■

Full wheel trim*

Pulling off

– Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit into the reinforced edge of the full wheel trim.

– Push the wheel key through the clamp, support the wheel key at the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Installing

– First press the full wheel trim onto the wheel at the valve opening provided. Then press the full wheel trim into the wheel in such a way that its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

Caution

- Use the pressure of your hand, do not knock on the full wheel trim! Heavy knocks mainly on the points where the full wheel trim has not been inserted into the wheel, can result in damage to the guide and centering elements of the full wheel trim.
- First check for yourself that the theft-deterrent wheel bolt is located ⇒ page 235, “Securing wheels against being stolen*” in the hole in the area of the valve before fitting the full wheel trim onto a steel wheel which is attached with a theft-deterrent wheel bolt. ■

Wheel bolts with caps*

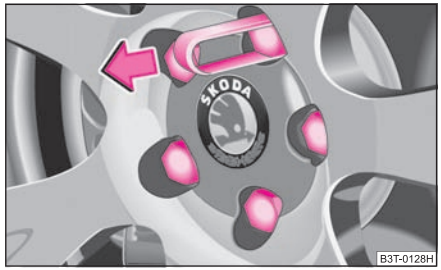

Fig. 202 Removing the cap.

Pulling off

– Push the plastic clip sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the clip are positioned at the collar of the cap and detach the cap ⇒ fig. 202.

Installing

– Push the caps fully onto the wheel bolts.

The caps are located in the well of the luggage compartment. ■

Wheel trim caps*

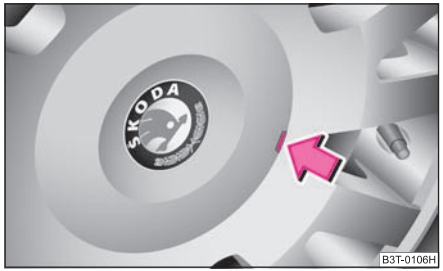

Fig. 203 Pulling off wheel trim cap on light alloy wheels

Pulling off

– Carefully remove the wheel trim cap using the removal hook ⇒ fig. 203. ■

Slackening and tightening wheel bolts

Slacken the wheel bolts before jacking up the vehicle.

Fig. 204 Changing a wheel: Slackening wheel bolts

Slackening wheel bolts

– Insert the wheel wrench fully onto the wheel bolt [15].

– Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt about **one** turn to the left ⇒ fig. 204.

Tightening wheel bolts

– Insert the wheel wrench fully onto the wheel bolt [15].

– Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt to the right until it is tight.

WARNING

Slacken the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) as long as the vehicle has not yet been jacked up – risk of an accident!.

Note

apply pressure carefully with your **foot** to the end of the wheel wrench if it proves difficult to slacken the wheel bolts. Hold tight on the vehicle when doing this and ensure that you have a steady position. ■

[15] Use the appropriate adapter for slackening and tightening the safety wheel bolts ⇒ page 235.

Raise vehicle

You have to raise the vehicle with a lifting jack in order to be able to take off the wheel.

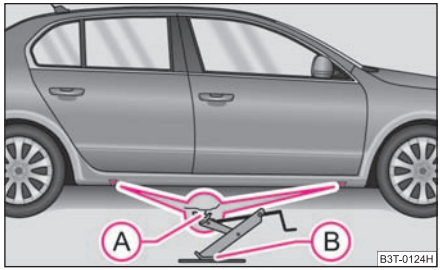

Fig. 205 Changing a wheel: Points for positioning car jack

Position the lifting jack by selecting the jacking point which is closest to the wheel to be removed ⇒ fig. 205. The jacking point is located directly below the engraving in the lower sill.

- Position the lifting jack below the jacking point and move it up until its claw is positioned directly below the vertical web of the lower sill.
- Align the car jack so that its claw grasps the web of the lower sill (A) and the base plate (B) is resting flat on the floor.
- Turn the lifting jack up further until the wheel is just clear of the ground.

Ground below the lifting jack which is soft and slippery can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the **surface is smooth**, such as cobbled stones, a tiled floor, etc.

WARNING

- **Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed – risk of injury!**

WARNING (continued)

- **Take suitable measures to prevent the base of the lifting jack from slipping off – risk of injury!**
- **Not positioning the lifting jack at the specified points can result in damage to the vehicle. The jack can also slip off if it does not have sufficient grip – risk of injury!**
- **It is important to support the vehicle with suitable supporting blocks if you wish to work under the lifted vehicle – risk of injury!** ■

Securing wheels against being stolen*

You need a special adapter for slackening the safety wheel bolts.

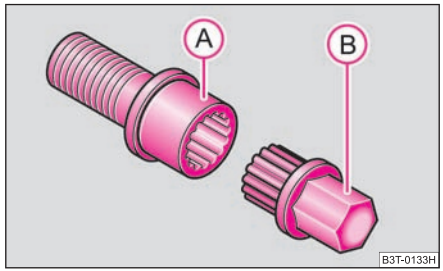

Fig. 206 Safety wheel bolt with adapter

- Pull off the full wheel trim/cap from the wheel hub or cap from the safety wheel bolt.
- Insert the adapter (B) with its toothed side fully into the inner toothing of the safety wheel bolt (A) right down in such a way that only the outer hexagon is jutting out ⇒ fig. 206.
- Insert the wheel wrench fully onto the adapter (B).
- Slacken the wheel bolt, or tighten it firmly ⇒ page 234.

– Reinstall the full wheel trim/wheel cap after removing the adapter or place the cap onto the safety wheel bolt.

– Have the **tightening torque checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible. Steel and light alloy wheels must be tightened to a tightening torque of **120 Nm**.

The safety wheel bolts on vehicles fitted with them (one safety wheel bolt per wheel) can only be loosened or tighten up by using the adapter provided.

It is meaningful to note the code number hammered into the rear side of the adapter or the rear side of the safety wheel bolts. You can obtain a replacement adapter from a Škoda Service Partner, if necessary, by quoting this number.

We recommend that you always carry the adapter for the wheel bolts with you in the vehicle. It should be stowed in the vehicle tool kit.

Caution

Damage can occur to the adapter and safety wheel bolt if the safety wheel bolt is tightened up too much.

Note

The set of safety wheel bolts can be obtained from a Škoda Service Partner. ■

Jump-starting

Initial steps

You can use the battery of another vehicle for jump-starting yours if the engine does not start because the battery on your vehicle is flat. You will require jump-start cables for this purpose.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

Jump-start cables

Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Please pay attention to the manufacturer's instructions.

Positive cable – colour coding in the majority of cases red.

Negative cable – colour coding in the majority of cases black.

WARNING

- **A discharged battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0°C. In case of frozen battery carry out no jump-starting – risk of explosion!**
- **Please pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment ⇒ page 209, "Working in the engine compartment".**

Note

- There must not be any contact between the two vehicles otherwise current may flow as soon as the negative terminals are connected.
- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the system of the vehicle.
- Switch off any mobile phone, pay attention to the instructions for use of the mobile phone in such a situation.
- We recommend purchasing jump-start cables from Škoda Service Partners as a Škoda original accessory or from retailers who sell branded batteries. ■

Start engine

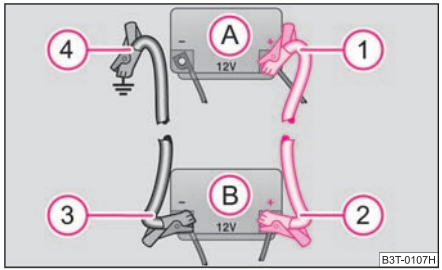

Fig. 207 Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle: A – flat vehicle battery, B – battery providing current

It is important to connect the jump-start cables in the correct order.

Connecting positive terminals

- Attach one end (1) to the positive terminal ⇒ page 237, fig. 207 of the discharged battery (A).
- Attach the other end (2) to the positive terminal of the battery supplying the power (B).

Connecting negative terminal and engine block

- Attach one end (3) to the negative terminal of the battery supplying the power (B).
- Attach the other end (4) to a solid metal part which is connected firmly to the engine block, or to the engine block itself.

Starting engine

- Start the engine of the vehicle providing current and run the engine at idling speed.
- Now start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
- Interrupt the attempt at starting an engine after 10 seconds if it does not start right away and wait for about 30 seconds before repeating the attempt.
- Disconnect the cables on the engine in exactly the **reverse order** they were connected up.

WARNING

- **The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never make contact with each other. Furthermore, the cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – risk of a short circuit!**
- **Do not affix the jump starting cables to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.**
- **Run the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.**
- **Do not bend over the batteries – risk of caustic burns!**
- **The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.**
- **Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, smouldering cigarettes etc.) away from the battery – risk of an explosion!** ■

Tow-starting and towing vehicle

General

Please pay attention to the following instructions if you are going to use a tow rope:

Driver of the towing vehicle

- Do not drive off until the tow rope is taught.

– Release the clutch particularly gently when starting off or depress the accelerator particularly gently if your vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

Driver of the towed vehicle

– Switch the ignition on so that the steering wheel is not blocked and you can also operate the turn signal lights, the headlight flasher, the windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system.

– Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if your vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

– Note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. You will require significantly greater physical force to depress the brake pedal and to steer the vehicle if the engine is not running.

– Ensure that the tow rope is always kept taught.

Tow rope or tow bar

A tow **bar** is safest way of towing a vehicle and also minimizes any shocks. You can use a tow **rope** only if a suitable tow bar is not available.

The tow rope must be elastic to protect the vehicle. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.

Only attach the tow rope to the **towing eyes** provided for this purpose ⇒ page 238 and ⇒ page 239.

Driving style

Towing another vehicle requires a certain amount of practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the particular points about towing a vehicle. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow in another vehicle or to be towed in.

One should be constantly vigilant not to allow impermissibly high towing forces or jerky loadings. There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.

Caution

If the gearbox of your vehicle no longer contains any oil because of a defect, your vehicle must only be towed in with the driven wheels raised clear of the ground, or on a special vehicle transporter or trailer.

Note

- Please comply with any legal requirements particularly regarding the switched on signal systems, when towing in or tow-starting another vehicle.
- The tow rope must not be twisted as it may in certain circumstances result in the front towing eye being unscrewed out of your vehicle. ■

Front towing eye

The towing eye is stored in the box for the vehicle tool kit.

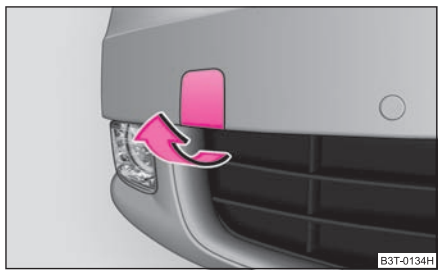

Fig. 208 Front bumper: Protective grille

Fig. 209 Front bumper: Installing the towing eye

- Take the cover out of the front bumper ⇒ fig. 208.
- Screw in the towing eye anticlockwise down to the stop ⇒ fig. 209 and tighten up using the wheel wrench (push the wheel wrench through eye).
- Put the cover in place after screwing out the towing eye again and press into place. The cover must engage firmly. ■

Rear towing eye

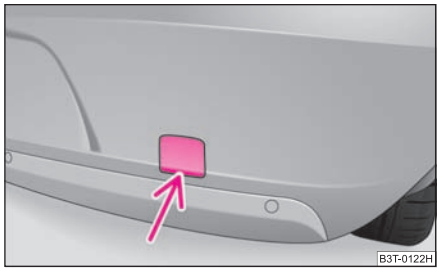

Fig. 210 Rear bumper: Removing cover

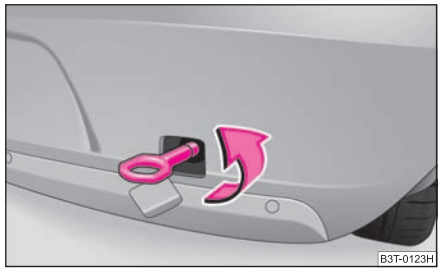

Fig. 211 Rear bumper: Installing the towing eye

- Press onto the bottom part of the cap in the rear bumper ⇒ fig. 210 and take it out.
- Screw in the towing eye anticlockwise down to the stop ⇒ fig. 211 and tighten up using the wheel wrench (push the wheel wrench through eye).
- Put the cover in place after screwing out the towing eye again and press into place. The cover must engage firmly. ■

Tow-starting a vehicle

If the engine does not start, we generally do **not recommend** to tow-start your vehicle. One should attempt to start the engine using jump start cables ⇒ page 236 or call on the services of the SERVICE mobile.

If your vehicle has to be towed

- Engage 2nd or 3rd gear with the vehicle stationary.
- Depress the clutch pedal fully and keep it depressed.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Wait until both vehicles are moving then release the clutch pedal slowly.

– Depress the clutch pedal fully when the engine fires and take the vehicle out of gear.

For technical reasons it is not possible to tow-start a car fitted with an **automatic gearbox**.

WARNING

There is high risk of having an accident when tow-starting a vehicle, when for example the towed vehicle runs into the towing vehicle.

Caution

Vehicles which are fitted with a catalytic converter should not be tow-started over a distance of more than 50 metres. Unburnt fuel may get into the catalytic converter and damage it. ■

Towing in a vehicle fitted with a manual gearbox

Please refer to the notes ⇒ page 237.

The car can be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised. The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**. ■

Towing of a vehicle with an automatic gearbox

Please refer to the notes ⇒ page 237.

The car can be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope. Refer at the same time to the following guidelines.

- Move **selector lever into N**.
- The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.
- The maximum permissible towing distance is **50 km**. The gear oil pump does not operate when the engine is not running; the gearbox would not be adequately lubricated at higher speeds and over longer towing distance.

Caution

If the vehicle is towed in by a recovery vehicle, it should only be towed in with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at rear, the automatic gearbox is damaged! (Does not apply to the automatic gearbox DSG).

Note

The vehicle must be transported on a special vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km. ■

Fuses and light bulbs

Electric fuses

Replacing fuses

Defect fuses must be replaced.

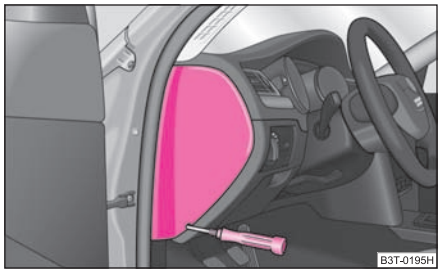

Fig. 212 Fuse cover: left side of the dash panel

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses. The fuses are located on the left side of the dash panel behind the safety cover and under the cover in the engine compartment on the left.

- Switch the ignition off and also the electrical component affected.
- Use a screwdriver to take off the fuse cover on the side of the dash panel ⇒ fig. 212 or the fuse cover in the engine compartment ⇒ page 242, fig. 213.
- Find out which fuse belongs to the relevant component ⇒ page 245, “Fuse assignment in the dash panel”, ⇒ page 242, “Fuse assignment in engine compartment - version 1” or ⇒ page 244, “Fuse assignment in engine compartment - version 2”.
- Take the plastic clip out of its fixture in the fuse cover, insert it onto the respective fuse and pull out this fuse.
- Defect fuses can be detected by their melted metal strips. Replace the defect fuse by a new fuse of the **same** ampere number.
- Fit on the fuse cover again.

We recommend that you carry the box of replacement fuses with you which was delivered in your vehicle. You can obtain replacement fuses [16] from a Škoda Service Partner.

Colour coding of fuses

Colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
brown	7,5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
white	25
green	30
orange	40
red	50

Caution

- Never attempt to “repair” fuses and also do not replace them with a fuse of a higher amperage - risk of fire! This may also cause damage at another part of the electrical system.
- Have the electrical system checked as quickly as possible by a specialist garage if a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time. ■

[16] Replacement fuses are, on the other hand, part of the basic equipping of the vehicle in some countries.

Fuse cover in engine compartment

The fuse box in the engine compartment exists in two different versions. You can determine which version your vehicle is fitted with after removing the fuse cover at the location of the fuses.

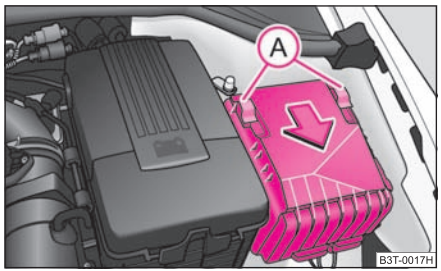

Fig. 213 Fuse cover in engine compartment

For particular model versions, the battery must be removed before removing the fuse cover ⇒ page 216.

Removing fuse cover

– Move the circlips (A) ⇒ fig. 213 as far as the stop, the symbol appears behind the circlip and remove the cover.

Installing fuse cover

– Position the fuse cover on the fuse box and push the circlips (A) as far as the stop - the symbol is visible behind the circlip.

Caution

- When unlocking and locking the fuse cover, it must be pressed on the sides to the box, otherwise damage can occur to the locking mechanism.
- Carefully position the fuse cover in the engine compartment. If the cover was not correctly positioned, water can get into the fuses and this results in a damage to the vehicle! ■

Fuse assignment in engine compartment – version 1

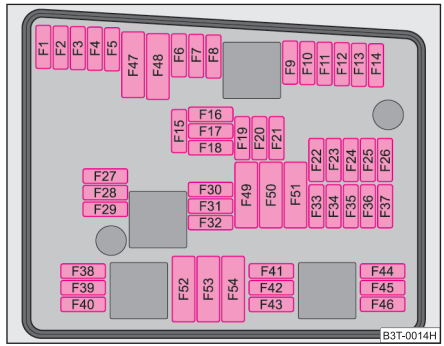

Fig. 214 Schematic representation of fuse box in engine compartment – version 1

Certain electrical components are only standard on certain vehicle model versions or only suppliable as optional equipment for certain models.

No.	Power consumer	Amperes
F1	Front right main headlight, right rear light unit	30
F2	Valves for ABS	20
F3	Not assigned	
F4	Not assigned	
F5	Horn	15
F6	Power supply for terminal 15 (ignition on)	40
F7	Not assigned	
F8	Not assigned	
F9	Valves	10
F10	Not assigned	
F11	Lambda probe	10

No.	Power consumer	Amperes
F12	Lambda probe	10
F13	Control unit for automatic gearbox	15
F14	Not assigned	
F15	Water pump	10
F16	Not assigned	
F17	Instrument cluster, windshield wiper lever and turn signal light lever	5
F18	Audio amplifier (sound system)	30
F19	Radio	15
F20	Phone	5
F21	Not assigned	
F22	Not assigned	
F23	Engine control unit	10
F24	Control unit for CAN databus	5
F25	Not assigned	
F26	Not assigned	
F27	Valve for fuel dosing	15
F28	Engine control unit	15
F29	Main relay	5
F30	Control unit for auxiliary heating	20
F31	Front window wiper	30
F32	Not assigned	
F33	Not assigned	
F34	Not assigned	
F35	Not assigned	

No.	Power consumer	Amperes
F36	Not assigned	
F37	Not assigned	
F38	Radiator fan, valves	10
F39	Not assigned	
F40	Not assigned	
F41	Not assigned	
F42	Not assigned	
F43	Ignition	30
F44	Not assigned	
F45	Not assigned	
F46	Not assigned	
F47	Front left main headlight, left rear light unit	30
F48	Pump for ABS	40
F49	Not assigned	
F50	Not assigned	
F51	Not assigned	
F52	Power supply relay - terminal [a)]	40
F53	Accessory equipment	50
F54	Not assigned	

a) In order not to drain the battery unnecessarily when starting the engine, the electrical components of this terminal are automatically switched off.

Fuse assignment in engine compartment – version 2

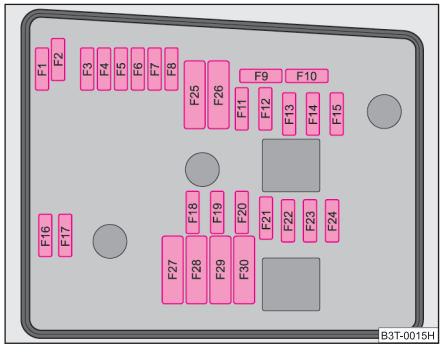

Fig. 215 Schematic representation of fuse box in engine compartment – version 2

Certain electrical components are only standard on certain vehicle model versions or only suppliable as optional equipment for certain models.

No.	Power consumer	Amperes
F1	Not assigned	
F2	Control unit for automatic gearbox DQ200	30
F3	Measuring circuit	5
F4	Valves for ABS	30/20
F5	Control unit for automatic gearbox DQ250	15
F6	Instrument cluster, windshield wiper lever and turn signal light lever	5
F7	Power supply for terminal 15 (ignition on)	40
F8	Radio	15
F9	Phone	5
F10	Engine control unit, Main relay	5/10
F11	Control unit for auxiliary heating	20
F12	Control unit for CAN databus	5
F13	Engine control unit	15/30
F14	Ignition	20
F15	Lambda probe - Petrol Glow plug system relay and fuel pump - Diesel	10 5
F16	Front right main headlight, right rear light unit	30
F17	Horn	15
F18	Audio amplifier (sound system)	30
F19	Front window wiper	30
F20	Valve for fuel dosing water pump	20 10
F21	Lambda probe	10/15
F22	Not assigned	
F23	Main relay Valves High pressure pump	5 10 15
F24	Fan	10
F25	Pump for ABS	30/40
F26	Left main headlight	30
F27	Control unit for glow plug system	50
F28	Not assigned	
F29	Accessory equipment	50
F30	Power supply relay - terminal X [a)]	50

a) In order not to drain the battery unnecessarily when starting the engine, the electrical components of this terminal are automatically switched off.

Fuse assignment in the dash panel

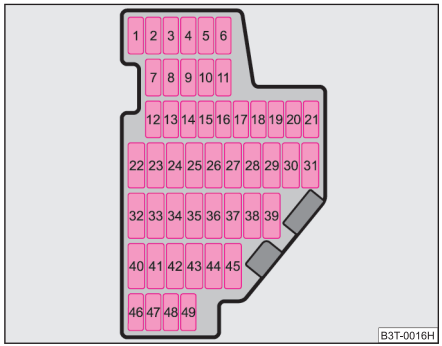

Fig. 216 Schematic representation of the fuse carrier in the dash panel

Certain electrical components are only standard on certain vehicle model versions or only suppliable as optional equipment for certain models.

No.	Power consumer	Amperes
1	Diagnostic socket, engine control unit, relay EKP, control unit for EKP	7,5
2	Control unit for ABS, ESP, switch for tyre inflation pressure-control system, brake sensor	5
3	Switch and control unit for airbag	5
4	WIV, parking light, dimming rear mirror, pressure sensor, telephone preinstallation	5
5	Control unit for headlamp beam adjustment and headlight swivel, control unit for parking aid	5
6	Instrument cluster, control unit for electromechanical power steering, Haldex	5
7	Valve heating, air mass meter	10
8	Control unit for trailer detection	5
9	Relay for auxiliary heating	5
10	Adaptive left main headlight	10
11	Adaptive right main headlight	10
12	Central locking system of the front doors	10
13	Diagnostic socket, light switch, rain sensor, clock	7,5
14	Central locking system and bonnet lid	15
15	Central control unit - interior lights	7,5
16	The air conditioning system	7,5
17	Central locking system of the rear doors	10
18	Not assigned	
19	Not assigned	
20	ABS, ESP, Uphill-Start off-Assist	5
21	Not assigned	
22	Air blower for Climatronic	40
23	Front power window	30
24	Selector lever lock	5
25	Rear window heater relay for auxiliary heating and ventilation	25 30
26	Power socket in the luggage compartment	25
27	Fuel pump relay, Fuel pump relay, control unit for fuel pump, injection valves	15 20
28	Not assigned	
29	Not assigned	
30	Not assigned	

No.	Power consumer	Amperes
31	Not assigned	
32	Rear power window	30
33	Electric sliding/tilting roof	25
34	Alarm, spare horn	5
35	front and rear lighter	25
36	Headlight cleaning system	20
37	Front seat heating	20
38	Heated rear seats	20
39	Not assigned	
40	Fan air-conditioning system, relay for auxiliary heating and ventilation	40
41	Not assigned	
42	Light switch	5
43	Towing device	15
44	Towing device	20
45	Towing device	15
46	Heated windscreen washer nozzles, relay for auxiliary heating and ventilation, switch for seat heating	5
47	Not assigned	
48	Not assigned	
49	Not assigned	

Electrically adjustable seats are protected by **automatic circuit breakers**, which switch on again automatically after a few seconds after the overload has been eliminated. ■

Bulbs

Changing bulbs

The relevant lamp must always be switched off before a light bulb is replaced.

Defect light bulbs should only be replaced with light bulbs of the same type. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.

Changing certain bulbs is not something which you can do yourself, but requires to be done by a specialist. Other parts of the vehicle must be removed in order to change the light bulbs. This applies, in particular, to bulbs which can only be reached from the engine compartment.

We therefore recommend that you have any bulbs changed by a Škoda Service Partner or, in exceptional cases, by calling on other professional assistance.

Please note that the engine compartment is a hazardous area ⇒ page 209, “Working in the engine compartment”.

We recommend that you carry the set of light bulbs with you which was delivered in your vehicle. Replacement light bulbs [17] are available at specialist garages.

The set of light bulbs can be stowed in the locable box in the spare wheel.

Fitted with a xenon headlight

Change of light bulbs on Xenon lights (low beam lights, parking lights and main beam lights) should be undertaken by a specialist garage.

Overview of bulbs ▶

[17] Replacement light bulbs are, on the other hand, part of the basic equipping of the vehicle in some countries.

Front headlight	Halogen headlight	Xenon headlight
Low beam	H7	D1S
Main beam	H3	D1S, H3
Parking lights	W5W	
Turn signals	PY 24W	
Fog lights	H8	

Rear light unit	Bulb
Reversing light	W16W
Turn signals	PY21W
Light bulb for the brake lights and tail lights	W16W
Parking lights	W5W
Fog lights	P21W

Others	Bulb
Licence plate light	C5W
front interior lighting	W5W
3. Brake light	LED
Rear interior lighting	W5W
Storage compartment light - front passenger side	C3W
Footwell light	W5W
Luggage compartment light	W5W
Door warning light	W5W
Lighting for vanity mirror	C5W
Entry light	W5W

WARNING

- **Bulbs H7 and H3 are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb – risk of injury!**
- **It is recommended to wear gloves and eye protection when changing a light bulb.**
- **Gas discharge bulbs* (xenon bulbs) operate with a high voltage, professional knowledge is required – danger to life!**

Caution

Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, serviette or something similar.

Note

This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is assumed that no major complications will arise. Other light bulbs should be changed by your specialist garage. ■

Front headlight

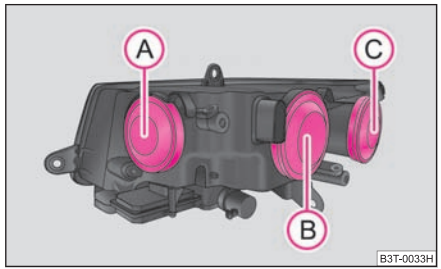

Fig. 217 Front headlight: Installing the light bulbs

Positions of the light bulbs in the front headlight ⇒ fig. 217.

Ⓐ - parking lights and main beam lights

Ⓑ - low beam lights

Ⓒ - Turn signal light (at the front) ■

Parking lights and main beam lights

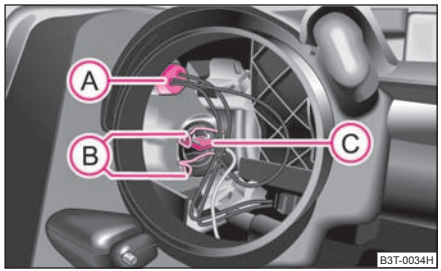

Fig. 218 Removing the light bulb for the parking and main beam light

Removing the light bulb for the parking light

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Open the bonnet.
- Remove the protective cap Ⓐ ⇒ page 247, fig. 217.
- Remove the socket Ⓐ ⇒ fig. 218.
- Take the faulty bulb out of the fixture and insert a new one.

Removing the light bulb for the main beam light

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Open the bonnet.
- Remove the protective cap Ⓐ ⇒ page 247, fig. 217.
- Press the sprung wire clamps Ⓑ ⇒ fig. 218 together and hang them to the side.
- Remove the socket Ⓒ ⇒ fig. 218.
- Take the faulty bulb out of the fixture and insert a new one

Installation takes place in the reverse order.

Note

We recommend that you have the headlight setting checked by a Skoda Service Partner after replacing the light bulb. ■

Low beam light

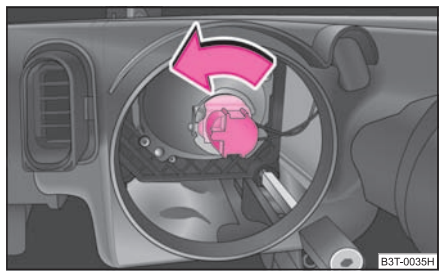

Fig. 219 Removing the light bulb for the low beam light

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Open the bonnet.
- Remove the protective cap Ⓑ ⇒ page 247, fig. 217.
- Turn the connector with the light bulb up to the stop towards the left and remove ⇒ fig. 219.

– Replace the lamp, insert the connector with the new lamp and turn to the right up to the stop.
– Insert the protective cover.

Note

We recommend that you have the headlight setting checked by a Skoda Service Partner after replacing the light bulb. ■

Fog lights

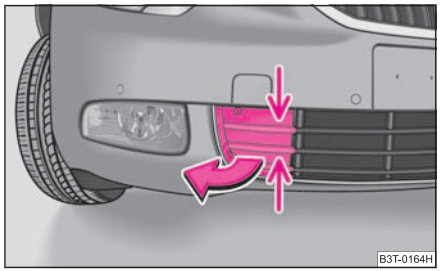

Fig. 220 Front bumper: Protective grille

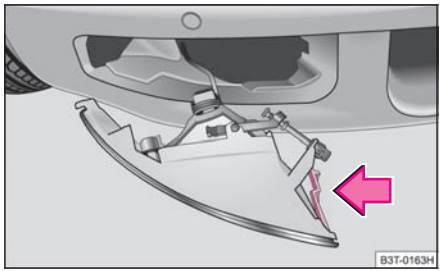

Fig. 221 Remove front fog light

– Switch the ignition and all lights off.
– Grasp the grille at the point marked with the arrow and take it out ⇒ fig. 220.
– Guide your hand into the opening in which the grille was located and press the spring bolt ⇒ fig. 221.
– Take out the fog light.
– Turn the connector with the light bulb up to the stop towards the left and remove.
– Replace the lamp, insert the connector with the new lamp and turn to the right up to the stop.
– To re-insert the fog light, first of all place the fog light with the bolt on the side opposite the marking.
– Press into place the headlight onto the side facing the marking.
– FIrst of all put the grille in place on the side opposite the marking.
– Press into place the protective grille onto the side facing the marking. ■

Rear light unit

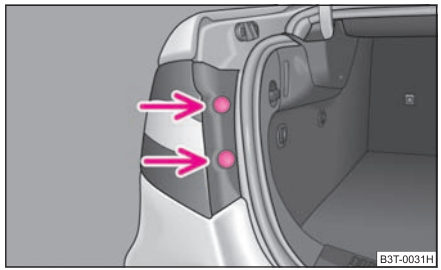

Fig. 222 Remove the outer part of the rear light unit

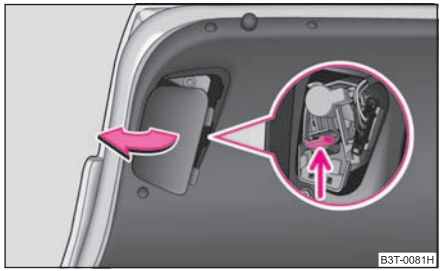

Fig. 223 Remove the inner part of the rear light unit

Remove and install the outer part of the rear light unit

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Open the boot lid/luggage compartment door.
- Take out the plug ⇒ page 249, fig. 222 and unscrew the rear light unit using a torx wrench [18].
- Carefully remove the rear light unit. Do not pull the grommet with the cables out of the body.
- To re-insert the rear light unit, first of all guide it with the support (A) ⇒ fig. 224 towards the front onto a bolt on the bodywork.
- Carefully press the rear light unit into the bodywork.
- Screw the rear light unit tight and press in the plugs ⇒ page 249, fig. 222.

Remove and install the inner part of the rear light unit

- Switch the ignition and all lights off.
- Open the boot lid/luggage compartment door.
- Take off the cover of the rear light unit on the inner side of the bonnet lid ⇒ fig. 223.
- Press the spring bolt ⇒ fig. 223 and take the lamp holder out of the housing of the rear light unit.
- To re-insert the lamp holder, guide it into the housing of the rear light unit.
- Press onto the spring bolt until it locks in place.
- Guide the cover of the rear light unit into the inner side of the bonnet lid.

Caution

When removing and installing the rear light unit make sure not to damage the paintwork of the vehicle and the rear light unit. ■

Changing light bulbs in the rear light unit

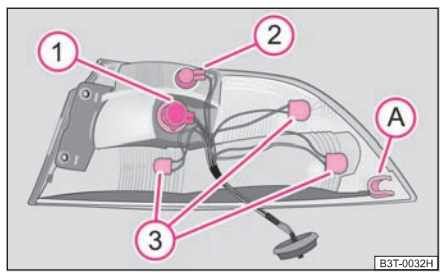

Fig. 224 Outer part of the rear light unit: Lamps

[18] The torx wrench is located in a vehicle toolkit box on the spare wheel.

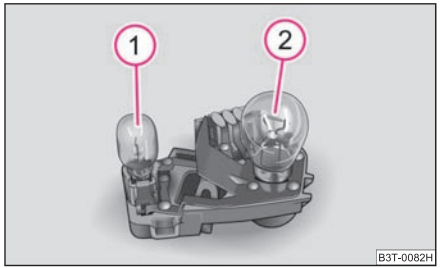

Fig. 225 Inner part of the rear light unit: Lamps

Change bulbs in the outer part of the rear light unit

- To change a bulb, turn its fixture to the left up to the top and take it out.
- Now change the bulb, insert again the fixture with the bulb into the housing and turn it to the right up to the stop.

Change bulbs in the inner part of the rear light unit

- To change a bulb of the rear light (1) ⇒ fig. 225, pull the defective bulb out of the fixture and insert a new one.
- To change the bulb of the rear fog light (2) ⇒ fig. 225, turn the defective bulb to the left up to the stop and take it out.
- Press a new bulb into the fixture and turn the bulb to the right as far as the stop.

Fitting position of the bulbs in the outer rear light unit ⇒ page 250, fig. 224.

1 - Turn signal light

2 - Parking lights / Brake light

3 - Parking lights

Fitting position of the bulbs in the inner rear light unit ⇒ fig. 225.

1 - Reversing lights

2 - Rear fog light ■

Licence plate light

Fig. 226 Rear bumper: Licence plate light

- Unscrew the glass cover of the light ⇒ fig. 226.
- Take the faulty bulb out of the fixture and insert a new one.
- Replace the the glass cover of the light and press it down to the stop - ensure that the glass cover is correctly installed.
- Screw the glass cover tight. ■

Luggage compartment light

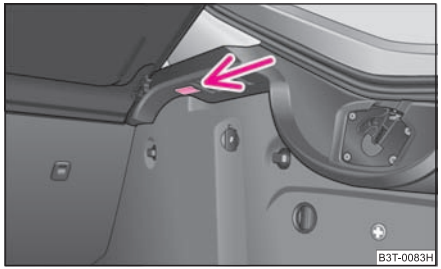

Fig. 227 Remove the luggage compartment light

- Open the boot lid/luggage compartment door.
- Insert a narrow screwdriver into the slot ⇒ fig. 227 and carefully take out the light.
- Take the faulty bulb out of the fixture and insert a new one.
- Insert the light first of all on the side opposite the arrow and carefully press it in stepwise until it locks in place. ■

Lighting for vanity mirror

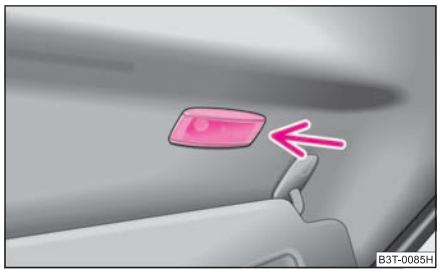

Fig. 228 Lighting for vanity mirror

Change the bulb in the lighting for the vanity mirror on the front passenger side

- Insert a narrow screwdriver into the slot ⇒ fig. 228 and carefully take out the light.
- Take the faulty bulb out of the fixture and insert a new one.
- Insert the light first of all on the side opposite the arrow and carefully press it in stepwise until it locks in place.

Change the bulb in the lighting for the vanity mirror on the driver side

- Insert a narrow screwdriver into the slot on the left side of the light and carefully pull out the light.
- Take the faulty bulb out of the fixture and insert a new one.
- Insert the light first of all on the right side and carefully press it in stepwise until it locks in place. ■

Interior lights at the rear

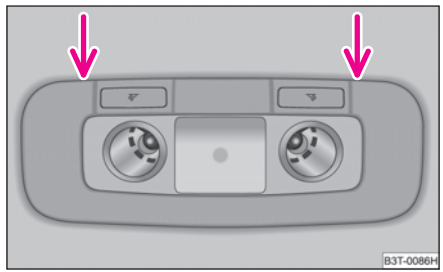

Fig. 229 Roof liner light at the rear

- Insert a narrow screwdriver into the slot ⇒ fig. 229 and carefully take out the cover.

– Take the faulty bulb out of the fixture and insert a new one.
– Insert the light first of all on the side opposite the arrows ⇒ page 252, fig. 229 and press it in carefully until it locks in place. ■

Warning light in the doors and entry light

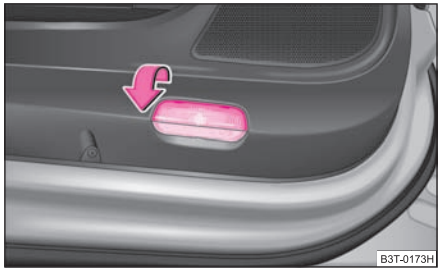

Fig. 230 Front door: Warning light

– Fold out the light in direction of arrow ⇒ fig. 230.
– Take the faulty bulb out of and insert a new one.
– First of all insert the light at the bottom and press in the upper part. ■

Technical Data

Technical Data

General information

The details given in the official vehicle registration documents always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual. Please refer to the official vehicle registration documents or consult your Škoda Service Partner concerning the engine with which your vehicle is equipped. ■

Used abbreviations

Abbreviation	Importance
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for the engine output
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
CO_2 in g/km	discharged quantity of carbon dioxide in grams per driven kilometer
RON	Research octane number, measuring unit for the knocking resistance of petrol
TSI	Fuel Stratified Injection
DPF	Diesel particle filter
M5	5-speed manual gearbox
M6	6-speed manual gearbox
DQ6	6-speed automatic gearbox DSG
DQ7	7-speed automatic gearbox DSG

■

Performances

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system. ■

Weight

The loading capacity is reduced in line with the range of the special equipment. The unloaden weight contains a fuel tank topped up to 90%. ■

Identification details

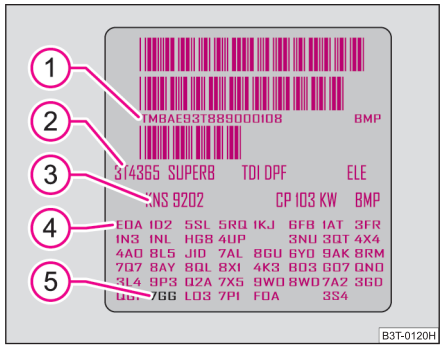

Fig. 231 Vehicle data sticker

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker ⇒ page 255, fig. 231 is located on the floor of the luggage compartment and is also stated in the Service schedule.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data:

1. Vehicle identification number (VIN).
2. Vehicle type.
3. Gearbox code, paint number, interior equipment number, engine output, engine code.
4. Partial description of the vehicle.
5. **7GG -** vehicles with DPF ⇒ page 186.

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand shock absorber dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code).

Engine number

The engine number is stamped into the engine block.

Type plate (production plate)

Is located on the left middle pillar of the bodywork.

Homologation sign

The homologation sign is located on the lock carrier. Vehicles for certain countries do not have an homologation sign.

Sticker on inside of fuel filler flap

The sticker is affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap. The sticker contains the following data:

- The prescribed types of fuel,
- Tyre size,
- Tyre pressure. ■

Fuel consumption according to the regulations (99/100/EU)

Depending on the range of the special equipment, style of driving, traffic situation, weather influences and vehicle condition, the consumption values which in practice result when using the vehicle can deviate from the indicated values.

Urban traffic

The consumption measurement in urban traffic begins with starting of the cold engine. Afterwards the normal urban traffic is simulated.

Non-urban traffic

For the consumption measurement in non-urban traffic the vehicle, as in daily motoring, is accelerated and braked several times in all gears. The vehicle speed changes within the range from 0 to 120 km/h.

Combined traffic

The consumption value in the combined traffic consists of 37% from the value for the urban traffic and of 63% from the value for the non-urban traffic.

Note

- Please note that the information stated in the **official vehicle registration documents** always takes priority. ■

Dimensions

Dimensions (mm)

Length	4838
Width	1817
Width including exterior mirror	2009
Height	1462/1482[a]/1447[b]
Wheel base	2761
Track gauge front / rear	1545/1518

a) The value is valid for vehicles with rough road package.
b) The value corresponds to the status with sport chassis.

1.8 ltr./118 kW TSI - EU 4

Engine

		M6
Power output	kW per rpm	118/5000 - 6200
Maximum torque	Nm per rpm	250/1500 - 4200
Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)		4/1798
Fuel - unleaded petrol min. RON		95

Performances

		M6
Maximum speed	km/h	220
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h	s	8,6

Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) and CO_2 emission (in g/km)

	M6
Urban	10,4
Non-urban	6,0
Combination	7,6
CO_2 emission - combination	180

Capacities (in liter)

Fuel tank capacity/of which spare	60/9
Reservoir for windscreen washer system/ with headlight cleaning system	3/5,5
Engine oil[a)]	3,0
Cooling system of the vehicle	5,5

a) Oil capacity with oil filter change. Inspect oil level when filling; do not fill up too much. The oil level must be between the markings ⇒ page 211, “Check engine oil level”.

Weight (in kg)

	M6
Permissible gross weight	2074
Unloaden weight ready for work	1454
Loading capacity	620
Loading capacity when using the TLC	545
Permissible front axle load	1200
Permissible rear axle load	1250
Permissible trailer load, trailer braked/unbraked	1500[a)] 1700[b)]

a) Uphills up to 12 %
b) Uphills up to 8%

1.9 ltr./77 kW TDI PD - EU 4

Engine

Power output	kW per rpm	77/4000
Maximum torque	Nm per rpm	250/1900
Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)		4/1896
Fuel		Diesel

Performances

		M5
Maximum speed	km/h	190
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h	s	12,5

Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) and CO_2 emission (in g/km)

	M5
Urban	7,3
Non-urban	4,8
Combination	5,7
CO_2 emission - combination	151

Capacities (in liter)

Fuel tank capacity/of which spare	60/9
Reservoir for windscreen washer system/ with headlight cleaning system	3/5,5
Engine oil[a)]	3,8
Cooling system of the vehicle	5,5

a) Oil capacity with oil filter change. Inspect oil level when filling; do not fill up too much. The oil level must be between the markings ⇒ page 211, “Check engine oil level”.

Weight (in kg)

	M5
Permissible gross weight	2076
Unloaden weight ready for work	1456
Loading capacity	620
Loading capacity when using the TLC	545
Permissible front axle load	1200
Permissible rear axle load	1250
Permissible trailer load, trailer braked/unbraked	1500[a)] 1700[b)]

a) Uphills up to 12 %
b) Uphills up to 8%

2.0 ltr./103 kW TDI PD - EU 4

Engine

Power output	kW per rpm	103/4000
Maximum torque	Nm per rpm	320/1800-2500
Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)		4/1968
Fuel		Diesel

Performances

		M6	DQ6
Maximum speed	km/h	207	205
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h	s	10,2	10,2

Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) and CO_2 emission (in g/km)

	M6	DQ6
Urban	7,5	8,9
Non-urban	5,0	5,5
Combination	5,9	6,8
CO_2 emission - combination	155	177

Capacities (in liter)

Fuel tank capacity/of which spare	60/9
Reservoir for windscreen washer system/ with headlight cleaning system	3/5,5
Engine oil[a)]	3,8
Cooling system of the vehicle	5,5

a) Oil capacity with oil filter change. Inspect oil level when filling; do not fill up too much. The oil level must be between the markings ⇒ page 211, “Check engine oil level”.

Weight (in kg)

	M6	DQ6
Permissible gross weight	2110	2132
Unloaden weight ready for work	1490	1512
Loading capacity	620	620
Loading capacity when using the TLC	545	545
Permissible front axle load	1200	1200
Permissible rear axle load	1250	1250
Permissible trailer load, trailer braked/unbraked	1800	1800

Index

A

Abroad ... 192
ABS ... 183
  Warning light ... 32
Accessories ... 228
Adaptive headlights ... 56
  Warning light ... 28
Adjusting seats ... 71, 150
  electrically ... 72
Adjusting the steering wheel ... 110
AHL ... 56
Air conditioning system ... 96
  Recirculated air mode ... 99
Airbag ... 160
  Deployment ... 161
  Front airbag ... 161
  Head airbag ... 167
  Knee airbag ... 164
  Side airbag ... 165
  Warning light ... 29
Airbag system ... 160
  Warning light ... 29
Airbags ... 160
Alarm ... 45
Alternator
  Warning light ... 34
Antilock brake system ... 183
Antilock brake system (ABS)
  Warning light ... 32
Anti-theft alarm system ... 45
Ashtray ... 85
Auto Check Control ... 22
Auto Computer ... 14
Automatic gearbox
  Emergency programme ... 128
Automatic gearbox DSG ... 123
  Kickdown ... 126
  Selector lever-emergency unlocking ... 128
  Tiptronic ... 126
Automatic light control ... 54
Automatic seat adjustment ... 73
Automatic vehicle wash systems ... 198
Automatic wiper/washer system ... 65
Avoiding damage to your vehicle ... 193

B

Battery ... 34, 216
  change ... 220
  Charge ... 219
  Inspecting the electrolyte level ... 219
  Operation in winter ... 219
Before setting off ... 150
Belt
  Warning light ... 33
Belt tensioners ... 158
Belts ... 154
Bluetooth ... 133, 138
Bonnet ... 208
  Warning light ... 33
Boot lid ... 41, 42
  Warning light ... 33
Brake
  Handbrake ... 114
  Warning light ... 34
Brake Assist ... 183
Brake booster ... 183
Brake fluid ... 215
Brake pads
  Warning light ... 33
Brakes ... 182
Button on the driver's door
  Power windows ... 47
Buttons for the central locking system ... 39

C

Car jack ... 230, 235
Car state ... 22
Catalytic converter ... 188
CD changer ... 146
Central locking system ... 38
Changing a wheel ... 231

Changing bulbs ... 246
Changing the engine oil ... 212
Changing wheels around ... 224
Charging the battery ... 219
  Warning light ... 34
Check engine oil level ... 211
Child safety ... 171
  Side airbag ... 173
Child safety lock ... 37
Child safety seat
  on the front passenger seat ... 172
  Safety information ... 171
Child seat ... 174
  Classification into groups ... 174
  ISOFIX system ... 177
  Use of child safety seats ... 174
Children and safety ... 171
Chrome parts ... 199
Cigarette lighter ... 86
Cleaning ... 197
Climatic
  Air outlet vents ... 99
Climatronic
  Air outlet vents ... 105
  Defrosting windows ... 105
  Recirculated air mode ... 103
Climatronic (automatic air conditioning) ... 100
Clock ... 14
Clothes hooks ... 95
Cockpit
  General view ... 8
Compartments ... 87
Computer ... 14
Convenience operation ... 49
Converting/masking over headlights ... 192
Coolant ... 213
  replenishing ... 214
  Warning light ... 31
Coolant level
  Warning light ... 31
Coolant quantity
  Warning light ... 31
Coolant temperature gauge ... 11
Coolant temperature/coolant level
  Warning light ... 31
Correct seated position ... 150
Counter for distance driven ... 12
Cruise control system ... 120
  Warning light ... 28
Cup holder
  front ... 84
  rear ... 84

D

Daylight driving lights ... 54
Deactivating
  an airbag ... 168
Deactivating an airbag ... 168
Defrosting rear window ... 63
De-icing the windows ... 200
Detachable towing device ... 196
Diesel ... 205
Diesel engines
  Starting the engine ... 112
Diesel particle filter ... 186
  Warning light ... 28
Digital clock ... 14
Direction indicators ... 60
  Warning light ... 27
Display ... 19
Distance driven ... 12
Door
  Child safety lock ... 37
Driver-steering recommendation ... 181
Driving economically ... 188

E

EDS ... 180
Electric power-operated window
  Operational faults ... 49
Electric sliding/tilting roof ... 50
Electrically adjustable exterior mirror ... 69
Electronic Differential Lock ... 180
Electronic immobiliser ... 37
Electronic stability programme ... 179
Electronic stability programme (ESP)
  Warning light ... 32
Engine
  starting ... 112
  switching off ... 113
Engine compartment
  Safety information ... 209

Engine electronics
Warning light ... 30
Engine oil ... 210
Changing ... 212
changing ... 212
check ... 211
replenishing ... 212
Warning light ... 30
Engine oil level
Warning light ... 35
Engine revolutions counter ... 11
Environment ... 188
Environmental compatibility ... 188, 192
ESP ... 179
Warning light ... 32
Exhaust gas
Warning light ... 29
Exhaust gas inspection
Warning light ... 29
Explanations ... 6
Exterior mirror ... 69
Exterior mirror heater ... 69

F

First-aid box ... 229
Fixing net ... 80
Fog lights ... 57, 249
Indicator light ... 28
Warning light ... 28
Fog lights with the function Corner ... 57
Front airbag ... 161
Front armrest ... 91
Front headlight ... 247
Fuel ... 205
Diesel fuel ... 205
Fuel gauge ... 11
Petrol ... 205
Fuel consumption ... 188
Saving energy ... 188
Fuel gauge ... 11
Fuel reserve
Warning light ... 35
Full wheel trim ... 233
Fuses ... 241

G

Gauges ... 10
Gearbox
mechanical ... 113
General view
Cockpit ... 8
Glass roof ... 50
Glow plug system ... 112
Warning light ... 30
GSM ... 133, 137

H

Handbrake ... 114
Hazard warning light system ... 59
Warning light ... 27
Head airbag ... 167
Head restraint ... 75
Headlamp range adjustment ... 59
Headlight cleaning system ... 67
Headlight flasher ... 60
Headlights
Fog lights ... 57
Headlight cleaning system ... 67
Heated windscreen washer nozzles ... 65
Heating
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating) ... 106
Horn ... 8

I

Ignition ... 111
Ignition lock ... 111
Immobiliser ... 37
Information display ... 19
Instrument cluster ... 10
Instrument lighting ... 58
Interior light
Luggage compartment ... 63
Interior lighting
front ... 61
Interior mirror ... 68
Interior monitor ... 46
Intermittent wiping ... 65
ISOFIX ... 177
ISOFIX system ... 177

J

Jacking points ... 235
Jump-starting ... 236, 237

K

Key ... 36
Knee airbag ... 164

L

Lashing eyes ... 79
Leather care ... 202
Light
  automatic ... 54
  Changing bulbs ... 246
Light bulbs
  Warning light ... 28
Lighting of the interior of the vehicle ... 61
Lights
  converting ... 192
  Range adjustment ... 59
  switching on and off ... 53
  Warning lights ... 26
Liquid in reservoir for windscreen washer system
  Warning light ... 34
Loading ... 78
Locking ... 38
  Remote control ... 44
Locking and unlocking from inside ... 39
Low beam ... 53
  Warning light ... 28
Low beam light ... 248
Lugagge ... 41, 42
Luggage compartment ... 41, 42, 78
  Folding hooks ... 80
  Lashing eyes ... 79
Luggage rack ... 83

M

Main beam ... 53, 60
  Warning light ... 28
Manual gearbox ... 113
Manual shifting of gears ... 113
Memory for the on-board computer ... 15
Mobile phone ... 133, 145
  Bluetooth ... 133, 137
Motoring abroad ... 192
Multifunction steering wheel ... 130
Multi-functional indicator ... 14

N

Navigation system ... 21
Note holder ... 85

O

Oil ... 210
  Warning light ... 30
Oil dipstick ... 211
Onboard computer ... 14
Open door
  Warning light ... 34
Opening a single door ... 38
Opening for skis ... 92
Operation in winter
  Battery ... 219
  Biodiesel ... 206
  De-icing windows ... 200
Outside temperature ... 17
Overview of the engine compartment ... 210

P

Paint ... 199
Paint damage ... 199
Park Assist ... 117
Parking ... 115
Parking aid
  rear ... 115
parking aid
  Front and rear ... 116
Parking light ... 60
Parking lights ... 248
Parking the vehicle ... 115
Passive Safety ... 149
Pedals ... 78
Petrol ... 205
Petrol engines
  Starting the engine ... 112
Polishing ... 199
Power steering ... 184
  Warning light ... 29
Power window ... 47

Power windows
Button in front passenger door and in rear doors 48
Button on the driver's door ... 47
Central locking system ... 49

R

Radiator fan ... 215
Rear armrest ... 77, 91
Rear fog light ... 58
Warning light ... 28
Rear window heater ... 63
Rear window heater ... 63
Rear-view mirror
Exterior mirror ... 69
Interior mirror ... 68
Recharge battery ... 219
Refuelling ... 206
Remote control ... 43
Synchronisation ... 45
Replacing fuses ... 241
Replacing the wiper blades ... 67
Roof aerial ... 198

S

Safe securing ... 39
Safety ... 149
Safety information
Engine compartment ... 209
Safety wheel bolts ... 235
Saving electrical energy ... 188
Seat belt height adjuster ... 157
Seat belt warning light ... 156
Seat belts ... 154, 158
Belt tensioners ... 158
Cleaning ... 203
fastening ... 156
Height adjustment ... 157
Safety information ... 155
taking off ... 158
Warning light ... 33
Seat heaters ... 77
Selector lever ... 124
Selector lever lock
Warning light ... 32
Selector lever positions ... 124
Selector lever-emergency unlocking (DSG) ... 128
Service Display ... 12
Service Interval Display ... 12
Setting the clock ... 14
Shifting ... 113
Side airbag ... 165
Side lights ... 53
Snow chains ... 226
Spare wheel ... 231
Speedometer ... 11
Stability system ... 179
Starting the engine ... 112
after fuel tank has run empty ... 113
Diesel engines ... 112
Petrol engines ... 112
Steering
Driver-steering recommendation ... 181
Steering force assistance ... 184
Storage compartment
Lighting ... 61
Storage compartments ... 87
Storage facilities ... 87
Stowage compartment
Umbrella ... 92
Sun ... 64
Sun screen ... 64
Switching lights on and off ... 53
Switching off the engine ... 113

T

Tailgate
Lighting ... 63
Taking care of your vehicle ... 197
TCS ... 181
Warning light ... 31
Telephone ... 133, 137
Temperature
outside ... 17
The roof luggage rack system ... 83
Thickness of brake pads
Warning light ... 33
Tilting roof ... 50
Tiptronic
automatic gearbox DSG ... 126
Tool ... 230
Top Tether ... 178

Towing a trailer ... 194
Towing device ... 196
Towing protection monitoring ... 46
towing vehicle ... 237
Tow-starting ... 237
Tow-starting and towing vehicle
Automatic gearbox ... 128
Traction Control System ... 181
Traction control system (TCS)
Warning light ... 31
Trailer ... 194
General Maintenance ... 194
Transporting children safely ... 171
Tread depth ... 223
Turn signal lights ... 60
Warning light ... 27
Twindoor ... 41
Two-way radio systems ... 145
Tyre ... 222
Tyre inflation pressure
Warning light ... 32
Tyres
Winter tyres ... 226

U

Underbody protection ... 201
Unlocking ... 38
Remote control ... 44
Uphill-Start off-Assist ... 184

V

Vanity mirror ... 64
Vehicle tool kit ... 230
Ventilation
Auxiliary ventilation ... 106
Visors ... 64

W

Warning lights ... 26
Warning symbols ... 26
Warning triangle ... 229
Washing ... 198
with a high-pressure cleaner ... 198
Washing the vehicle ... 197
Washing vehicle by hand ... 198
Wax treatment ... 199
Wheel
Changing ... 231
Spare ... 231
Wheel bolts ... 225
Wheel trim ... 222, 233
Wheels ... 222
Window ... 47
Windows
de-icing ... 200
Windscreen washer nozzles ... 65
Windshield washer fluid reservoir ... 220
Warning light ... 34
Windshield washer system ... 220
Windshield wiper ... 65
Winter tyres ... 226
Wiper blades
Replacing the wiper blades ... 67

X

Xenon headlights ... 246

Škoda Auto pursues a policy of constant product and model development. We trust that you will understand that changes to models in terms of shape, equipment and engineering, may be introduced at any time. It is therefore not possible for legal claims to be made based on the data, illustrations and descriptions contained in this Owner's Manual.

We reserve the right to make changes to this document.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

ŠkodaService
ŠkodaGenuine Parts
ŠkodaGenuine Accessories

How you can contribute to a cleaner environment

The fuel consumption of your Škoda – and thus the level of pollutants contained in the exhaust – is also determined by how you drive.

The noise level and wear and tear are also influenced by how you personally handle your vehicle. This Owner´s Manual tells you how to drive your Škoda to achieve the minimum impact on the environment, and how to save money at the same time. Look up „Environment“ in the Index to find out more.

Please also refer to all the texts identified with a ❀ in this Owner´s Manual.

Make your contribution – for the sake of the environment.

www.skoda-auto.com

Návod k obsluze
Superb anglicky 03.08
3T0 012 003 C